

UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549

FORM S-3
REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER
THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933

CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT, INC.

(Exact Name of Registrant as Specified in Its Charter)

Delaware

(State or Other Jurisdiction of Incorporation or Organization)

81-2560811

(I.R.S. Employer Identification Number)

**132 E. Putnam Avenue, Floor 2W
Cos Cob, Connecticut 06807
(203) 861-4000**

(Address, Including Zip Code, and Telephone Number, Including Area Code, of Registrant's Principal Executive Office)

**William J. Rouhana, Jr.
Chairman and Chief Executive Officer
Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc.
132 E. Putnam Avenue, Floor 2W
Cos Cob, Connecticut 06807
(203) 861-4000**

(Name, Address, Including Zip Code, and Telephone Number, Including Area Code, of Agent for Service)

Copies to:

**David Alan Miller, Esq.
Brian L. Ross, Esq.
Graubard Miller**

**405 Lexington Avenue, 11th Floor
New York, New York 10174
Telephone: (212) 818-8800
Fax: (212) 818-8881**

Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to the public: **From time to time after the effective date of this Registration Statement.**

If the only securities being registered on this form are being offered pursuant to dividend or interest reinvestment plans, please check the following box.

If any of the securities being registered on this form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, other than securities offered only in connection with dividend or interest reinvestment plans, check the following box.

If this form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, please check the following box and list the Securities Act of 1933 registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act of 1933, check the following box and list the Securities Act of 1933 registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this form is a registration statement pursuant to General Instruction I.D. or a post-effective amendment thereto that shall become effective upon filing with the Commission pursuant to Rule 462(e) under the Securities Act of 1933, check the following box.

If this form is a post-effective amendment to a registration statement filed pursuant to General Instruction I.D. filed to register additional securities or additional classes of securities pursuant to Rule 413(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, check the following box.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer", "accelerated filer" and "smaller reporting company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

Large accelerated filer

Non-accelerated filer

Accelerated filer

Smaller reporting company

Emerging Growth Company

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 7(a)(2)(B) of the Securities Act.

CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE

Title of each class of securities to be registered(1)	Amount to be registered	Proposed maximum offering price per unit	Proposed maximum aggregate offering price	Amount of registration fee(3)
Common stock, par value \$.0001 per share	(2)	(2)	(2)	—
Preferred stock, par value \$.0001 per share	(2)	(2)	(2)	—

Warrants	(2)	(2)	(2)	—
Debt Securities	(2)	(2)	(2)	—
Units(4)	(2)	(2)	(2)	—
Total			\$ 13,000,000	\$ 1,618.50

- (1) This registration statement covers (a) such indeterminate number of (i) shares of common stock and preferred stock, and (ii) warrants to purchase common stock, preferred stock, debt securities or other classes of securities offered hereby, (b) such indeterminate principal amount of debt securities of the registrant and (c) such indeterminate number of units comprised of the other classes of securities offered hereby as have a maximum aggregate offering size not to exceed \$13,000,000. The securities registered hereunder are to be issued from time to time at prices to be determined. The securities registered hereunder also include such indeterminate number of shares of common stock and preferred stock as may be issued upon conversion or exchange of preferred stock or debt securities that provide for conversion or exchange, upon exercise of warrants or pursuant to the anti-dilution provisions of any such securities to be offered hereby. In addition, pursuant to Rule 416 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, this registration statement shall be deemed to cover such additional number of securities as may be offered or issued in connection with any stock splits, stock dividends or similar transactions.
- (2) Omitted pursuant to General Instruction II.D of Form S-3 and Rule 457(o) promulgated under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended. The proposed amount to be registered, maximum offering price per unit and maximum aggregate offering price per class of security will be determined from time to time by the registrant in connection with the issuance by the registrant of the securities registered hereunder.
- (3) Calculated pursuant to Rule 457(o) promulgated under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.
- (4) Any securities registered hereunder may be sold separately or as units with other securities registered hereunder.

The registrant hereby amends this registration statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this registration statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 or until the registration statement shall become effective on such date as the Commission, acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.

The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. We may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any state where the offer or sale is not permitted.

Preliminary Prospectus

Subject to Completion

Dated September 28, 2018



\$13,000,000

**COMMON STOCK, PREFERRED STOCK, WARRANTS,
DEBT SECURITIES AND UNITS**

We will offer and sell from time to time shares of common stock, shares of preferred stock, warrants, debt securities and/or units comprised of one or more of the other classes of securities offered hereby, at a maximum aggregate offering size not to exceed **\$13,000,000**. The securities may be offered separately, together, or in series, and in amounts, at prices and on other terms to be determined at the time of each offering. We will provide the specific terms of the securities to be sold in a prospectus supplement.

We may sell the securities directly to investors, to or through underwriters or dealers or through agents designated from time to time, among other methods. The prospectus supplement for each offering will describe in detail the specific plan of distribution for the securities. The prospectus supplement also will set forth the price to the public of such securities, any placement agent's fees or underwriter's discounts and commissions, and the net proceeds we expect to receive from the sale of the securities.

Our Class A common stock is listed for trading on the Nasdaq Global Market under the symbol "CSSE" and our 9.75% Series A Cumulative Redeemable Perpetual Preferred Stock ("Series A Preferred Stock") is listed for trading on the Nasdaq Global Market under the Symbol "CSSEP." On September 27, 2018, the last reported sale prices of our Class A common stock and Series A Preferred Stock were \$10.74 and \$26.40, respectively. As of the date of this prospectus, none of the other securities that we may offer by this prospectus are listed on any national securities exchange or automated quotation system.

In addition to our Class A common stock, we have outstanding Class B common stock. Our Class B common stock is not publicly traded and the vast majority of it is controlled and beneficially owned by our chief executive officer. Holders of shares of Class A common stock and Class B common stock have substantially identical rights, except that holders of shares of Class A common stock are entitled to one vote per share and holders of shares of Class B common stock are entitled to ten votes per share. Holders of shares of Class A common stock and Class B common stock vote together as a single class on all matters (including the election of directors) submitted to a vote of stockholders, unless otherwise required by law or our charter. Each share of Class B common stock may be converted into a share of Class A common stock at any time at the election of the holder.

The aggregate market value of our outstanding voting common equity (*i.e.*, our Class A and Class B common stock) held by non-affiliates is \$42,018,676, based on a last sale price of \$10.85 per share of our Class A common stock on August 1, 2018. As of the date hereof, excluding the securities offered hereby, none of our securities have been sold pursuant to General Instruction I.B.6 of Form S-3 during the preceding 12 months.

We are an “emerging growth company” as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 and have elected to comply with certain reduced public company reporting requirements.

Investing in our securities involves a high degree of risk. See “Risk Factors” on page 8 in this prospectus and elsewhere in any supplements for a discussion of information that should be considered in connection with an investment in our securities.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or passed upon the adequacy or accuracy of this prospectus. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

The date of this prospectus is September 28, 2018

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS	ii
CERTAIN CORPORATE INFORMATION AND DEFINITIONS	ii
PROSPECTUS SUMMARY	1
RISK FACTORS	8
NOTE ON FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS	8
USE OF PROCEEDS	9
DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK	10
DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS	26
DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES	27
DESCRIPTION OF THE UNITS	33
PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION OF SECURITIES	34
LEGAL MATTERS	37
EXPERTS	37
WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION	37
INFORMATION INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE	37

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This prospectus is part of a registration statement that we filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission using a “shelf” registration process. Under this shelf process, we may, from time to time, sell or issue any of the combination of securities described in this prospectus in one or more offerings with a maximum aggregate offering size of up to \$13,000,000.

This prospectus provides you with a general description of the securities we may offer. Each time we sell securities, we will provide a prospectus supplement that will contain specific information about the terms of that offering. The prospectus supplement may also add, update or change information contained in this prospectus. If there is any inconsistency between the information in this prospectus and any prospectus supplement, you should rely on the information in that prospectus supplement. You should read both this prospectus and any prospectus supplement, together with the additional information described below under the heading “*Where You Can Find More Information*” and “*Information Incorporated by Reference*.”

You should rely only on the information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus and any prospectus supplement relating to a particular offering. We have not authorized anyone to provide you with different information and, if provided, such information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by us. Neither this prospectus nor any prospectus supplement nor any related issuer free writing prospectus shall constitute an offer to sell or a solicitation of an offer to buy offered securities in any jurisdiction in which it is unlawful for such person to make such an offering or solicitation. This prospectus does not contain all of the information included in the registration statement. For a more complete understanding of the offering of the securities, you should refer to the registration statement, including its exhibits.

You should not assume that the information appearing in this prospectus is accurate as of any date other than the date on the front cover of this prospectus. You should not assume that the information contained in any prospectus supplement or in the documents incorporated by reference herein or therein is accurate as of any date other than the respective dates of those documents. Our business, financial condition, results of operations, and prospects may have changed since that date.

CERTAIN CORPORATE INFORMATION AND DEFINITIONS

Our company, Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc., is referred to in this prospectus as “CSSE,” the “Company,” or “we” or similar pronouns. References to:

- “CSS Productions” means Chicken Soup for the Soul Productions, LLC, our immediate parent;
- “CSS” means Chicken Soup for the Soul, LLC, our intermediate parent company;
- “CSS Holdings” means Chicken Soup for the Soul Holdings, the parent company of CSS and our ultimate parent company;
- “Screen Media” means Screen Media Ventures, LLC, a wholly owned subsidiary of CSSE;
- “A Plus” means A Sharp Inc. (d/b/a Plus), an operating subsidiary owned 75% by CSS, 23% by Ashton Kutcher and 2% by other stockholders; and
- “Pivotshare” means Pivotshare, Inc., a wholly owned subsidiary of CSSE.

PROSPECTUS SUMMARY

This summary description about us and our business highlights selected information contained elsewhere in this prospectus or incorporated in this prospectus by reference. This summary does not contain all of the information you should consider before deciding to invest in our securities. You should carefully read this entire prospectus and any applicable prospectus supplement, including each of the documents incorporated herein or therein by reference, before making an investment decision. Investors should carefully consider the information set forth under the caption “Risk Factors” below and appearing elsewhere in this prospectus, including those described in documents incorporated by reference herein, and those described in any applicable prospectus supplement.

Overview

CSSE is a growing media company building online video on-demand (“VOD”) networks that provide positive and entertaining video content for all screens. We also curate, produce and distribute long and short-form video content that brings out the best of the human spirit, and distribute the online content of our affiliate, A Plus. We are aggressively growing our business through a combination of organic growth, licensing and distribution arrangements, acquisitions and strategic relationships. We are also expanding our partnerships with sponsors, television networks and independent producers. Our subsidiary, Screen Media, is a leading global independent television and film distribution company, which owns one of the largest independently owned television and film libraries. We also own Popcornflix[®], a popular online advertiser-supported VOD (“AVOD”) network, Pivotshare, a subscription-based VOD, and four additional AVOD networks, which collectively have rights to exhibit tens of thousands of hours of movies and television episodes.

We have an exclusive, perpetual and worldwide license agreement (“CSS License Agreement”) with our intermediate parent, CSS, a publishing and consumer products company, to create and distribute video content under the *Chicken Soup for the Soul*[®] brand (the “Brand”).

We operate in three areas:

- **Online Networks.** In this segment, we distribute and exhibit video on-demand content directly to consumers across all media platforms, such as smartphones, tablets, gaming consoles and the web through our Popcornflix[®], A Plus and Pivotshare networks. Popcornflix[®] had 15 million active users in 2017.
- **Television and Film Distribution.** In this segment, we distribute movies and television series worldwide to consumer through license agreements across all media, including theatrical, home video, pay-per-view, free, cable and pay television, VOD and new digital media platforms worldwide. We own the copyright or long-term distribution rights to more than 1,200 television series and feature films.
- **Television and Short-Form Video Production.** In this segment, we partner with highly regarded independent producers to develop and produce our video content, including Brand-related content.

Since our inception in January 2015, our business has grown rapidly. For the full year 2017, our audited net revenue was \$10.7 million, as compared to 2016 audited net revenue for the full year of \$8.1 million. For the six months ended June 30, 2018, our net revenue was \$8.7 million, as compared to net revenue for the six months ended June 30, 2017 of \$2.2 million. These increases were primarily due to the acquisition of Screen Media in November 2017. We had audited net income of \$22.8 million for the full year 2017, as compared to a full year audited net income of \$0.8 million in 2016. The full year 2017 included a gain on bargain purchase of \$24.3 million and acquisition-related expenses of \$2.2 million relating to the acquisition of Screen Media, as discussed in the 2017 10-K under the section entitled “*Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations—Recent Developments—Acquisition of Screen Media.*”

For the six months ended June 30, 2018, our net loss was \$2.0 million, as compared to a net loss for the six months ended June 30, 2017 of \$0.8 million.

Our 2017 unaudited Adjusted EBITDA was \$4.0 million for the full year, as compared to full year 2016 unaudited Adjusted EBITDA of \$3.8 million. For the six months ended June 30, 2018, our unaudited Adjusted EBITDA was \$2.1 million, as compared to unaudited Adjusted EBITDA for the six months ended June 30, 2017 of \$0.9 million.

To date we have reported the vast majority of our revenue and net income in the fourth quarter of each year. We have begun to sign some sponsorship contracts for 2018 and subsequent years, and are beginning production of some series, earlier in the year than in recent years. This has resulted in more balanced revenue across the third quarter of 2018, and should continue to result in more balanced revenue across the fourth quarter of 2018 and subsequent years. Additionally, revenue from both our online networks and television and film distribution business areas are more evenly spaced through the year, which should result in more balanced revenue, net income and Adjusted EBITDA going forward across all quarters of each year. While the operating results in these areas are expected to be more evenly distributed over fiscal quarters, the fourth quarter is generally the strongest quarter and the second quarter is generally the weakest quarter.

Business Strategy

Our vision is to use our solid core of traditional media production and distribution assets to build a powerful portfolio of online VOD networks and assets. Our production and distribution businesses generate current revenue and Adjusted EBITDA to fund our rapidly growing online networks. We will build and acquire assets such as content libraries, digital publishers with content related to our own, and stand-alone VOD networks.

One of our fundamental objectives is to continue to grow our VOD networks to create a “network of networks” as we continue to grow our content offerings to critical mass. Our strategy is to build our library of video content through a combination of Chicken Soup for the Soul original video content and opportunistic acquisitions of third-party video content libraries, such as our transformative acquisition of Screen Media, or other rights to video content as distressed networks seek to monetize their content libraries. We now own exhibition or distribution rights to over 34,000 hours of programming across our various platforms.

Online Networks

Our acquisition of Screen Media accelerated our entry into the direct-to-consumer VOD market through Popcornflix[®]. Popcornflix[®] has an extensive footprint with apps that have been downloaded by more than 25 million smartphones and other devices using iOS, Android and other operating systems. Popcornflix[®] had 15 million active users in 2018.

Popcornflix[®] is one of the largest AVOD services. Under the Popcornflix[®] brand, we operate a series of direct-to consumer advertising supported channels. On Popcornflix[®], we have the rights to exhibit more than 3,000 films and approximately 60 television series comprised of approximately 1,500 episodes, with new content added regularly. As a “free-to-consumer” digital streaming channel, Popcornflix[®] is an extremely popular online video platform that can be found on the web, iPhones and iPads, Android products, Roku, Xbox, Amazon Fire, Apple TV, Chromecast and Samsung and Panasonic Internet-connected televisions, among others. Popcornflix[®] is currently available in 56 countries and territories, including the United States, United Kingdom, Canada, Australia, the Scandinavian countries, Germany, France, Hong Kong and Singapore, with additional countries and territories to be added.

While Popcornflix® is currently an advertiser-supported VOD network, we expect to expand in subscription-based VOD networks.

Our entry into subscription-based VOD was recently initiated by our acquisition of the Pivotshare VOD network in August 2018. Pivotshare is comprised of a series of subscription-based VOD channels with 28,000 hours of programming. The network generates approximately \$2.5 million in gross billings and has approximately 25,000 paid subscriptions with average monthly billings of \$9 per subscription.

In addition to Popcornflix® and Pivotshare, we derive online networks revenue from our exclusive distribution relationship with A Plus, our affiliate, which develops and distributes high-quality, empathetic short-form videos and articles to millions of people worldwide. Our distribution relationship with A Plus allows us to accelerate the growth of our video library by providing us with content developed and distributed by A Plus that is complementary to the Brand.

Television and Film Distribution

We distribute television series and films worldwide through Screen Media. We own the copyright or long-term distribution rights to approximately 3,500 hours of television series and feature films, representing one of the largest independently owned libraries of filmed entertainment in the world. We distribute our television series and films through direct relationships across all media, including theatrical, home video, pay-per-view, free, cable and pay television, VOD and emerging digital media platforms worldwide.

Screen Media's distribution capabilities across all media will allow us to distribute our produced television series directly and eliminate the distribution fees (as much as 30% of revenue) that we currently pay to third parties for distribution of the rights we retain when we produce series with our sponsors. We believe that the cost savings from Screen Media's distribution capabilities will enhance our revenue and profits from our produced television series.

The Company has distribution licensing agreements with numerous VOD services across all major platforms, such as cable and satellite VOD and Internet VOD, which includes TVOD for rentals or purchases of films, AVOD for free-to-viewer streaming of films supported by advertisements and SVOD for unlimited access to films for a monthly fee.

Our cable and satellite VOD distribution agreements include those with DirecTV, Cablevision (Altice USA), Verizon and In Demand (owned by Comcast, Charter and Time Warner Cable). Our Internet VOD distribution agreements include those with Amazon, iTunes, Samsung, YouTube, Hulu, Xbox, Netflix, Sony and Vudu, among others.

We are rapidly expanding international distribution of our content through agreements with iTunes, Sony PlayStation and Xbox, among others. Under these agreements, our titles are available on iTunes, Sony PlayStation and Xbox in the United Kingdom, Australia, France, Germany, Italy and Hong Kong, with additional territories added regularly.

Television and Short-Form Video Production

We utilize the *Chicken Soup for the Soul* brand, together with our management's industry experience and expertise, to generate revenue through the production and distribution of video content. The Company partners with sponsors and uses highly-regarded independent producers to develop and produce video content. Using this approach provides us with access to a diverse pool of creative ideas for new video content projects and allows us to scale our business on a variable cost basis. We currently have producer agreements or arrangements in place with a number of these producers, including Litton Entertainment (a Hearst company). We anticipate entering into relationships with additional independent producers.

We seek committed funding from corporate and foundation sponsors covering more than the production costs prior to moving forward with a project. Since we seek to secure both the committed funding and production capabilities for our video content prior to moving forward with a project, we have high visibility into the profitability of a particular project before committing to proceed with such project. In addition, we take limited financial risk on developing our projects.

Corporate and foundation sponsors with which we work include HomeAway, Hilton Grand Vacations, American Humane, BISSELL Homecare, Inc., the Boniuk Foundation, Michelson Found Animals Foundation and the Morgridge Family Foundation, and we are currently in discussions with numerous others. We endeavor to retain meaningful back-end rights to our video content in these relationships, which provides opportunities for improved profitability and enhances our library value.

Our long-form video content consists of 30- to 60-minute episodic programs typically distributed initially on traditional television or cable networks. Our current long-form video content projects include:

- ***Chicken Soup for the Soul's Hidden Heroes ("Hidden Heroes")***. The multi-award winning *Hidden Heroes* is hosted by Brooke Burke and is currently airing its third season on The CW Network. A segment of *Hidden Heroes* can be seen at <https://cssentertainment.com/hiddenheroes>.
- ***Being Dad, a Chicken Soup for the Soul Original Series ("Being Dad")***. This series is an intimate, revealing and entertaining portrait of nine men who are tackling one of the most important roles in the world: fatherhood. The episodes are about the lives of dads who are facing challenges that are simultaneously unique and universal. For example, a farmer teaches his teenage daughter to drive; a single dad re-enters the dating scene; a touring rock musician takes his family with him on the road; an over-protective dad struggles with his autistic daughter's growing independence; and gay dads deal with the emotional complexities of adoption. The fathers are different ages, races, and religions, but they are all bound by the singular belief that raising their children is life's greatest gift.
- ***Vacation Rental Potential***. This new television show gives viewers the information and inspiration needed to realize their dreams of using real estate entrepreneurship to obtain financial success. Hosted by Holly Baker, *Vacation Rental Potential* offers people insight on how to make the dream of vacation homeownership possible. The show premiered on A&E Network in December 2017. In April 2018, *Vacation Rental Potential* was renewed for a second season by HomeAway.

Our short-form video content, including our branded short-form video content known as *Sips*, is receiving increased focus from our advertisers and sponsors. Such short-form video content is typically exhibited through online video content distribution and social media platforms, such as YouTube, Facebook, Yahoo, Dibly, Gateway Media, SheKnows, Rumble and Liquid Social among others, as well as on the social media channels of *Chicken Soup for the Soul* and our sponsors. A Plus is adding more short-form video content, and we are focusing on acquisitions in this space. Increasing revenue from short-form video will make our business less lumpy and assist in reducing the relative size of fourth quarter revenue compared to other quarters.

Competition

Video content production and distribution direct to consumers are highly competitive businesses. We face competition from companies within the entertainment business and from alternative forms of leisure entertainment, such as travel, sporting events, outdoor recreation, video games, the internet and other cultural and computer-related activities. We compete with the major studios, numerous independent motion picture and television production companies, television networks, pay television systems and online media platforms for the services of performing artists, producers and other creative and technical personnel, and production financing, all of which are essential to the success of our businesses.

In addition, our video content competes for media outlet and audience acceptance with video content produced and distributed by other companies. As a result, the success of any of our video content is dependent not only on the quality and acceptance of a particular production, but also on the quality and acceptance of other competing video content available in the marketplace at or near the same time.

Given such competition, and our stage of development, we intend to initially emphasize a lower cost structure, risk mitigation, reliance on financial partnerships and innovative financial strategies. Our cost structures are designed to utilize our flexibility and agility as well as the entrepreneurial spirit of our employees, partners and affiliates, in order to provide creative, desirable video content.

Intellectual Property

Under the CSS License Agreement, we have been granted the perpetual, exclusive, worldwide license by CSS to produce and distribute video content using the Brand and related content, such as stories published in the *Chicken Soup for the Soul* books. *Chicken Soup for the Soul* and related names are trademarks owned by CSS. We have the proprietary rights (including copyrights) in all our *Sips* and company-produced content. With the acquisition of Screen Media, the Company now owns copyrights or global long-term distribution rights to Screen Media film library as well as ownership of Screen Media's AVOD application Popcornflix®.

We rely on a combination of confidentiality procedures, contractual provisions and other similar measures to protect our proprietary information and intellectual property rights.

Employees

As of June 30, 2018, we had 31 direct employees. The services of certain personnel, including our chairman and chief executive officer, vice chairman and chief strategy officer, our senior brand advisor, and chief financial officer, are provided to us under the CSS Management Agreement and are not included as direct employees of the Company. We also utilize many consultants in the ordinary course of our business and hire additional personnel on a project-by-project basis. We believe that our employee and labor relations are good, and we are committed to inclusion and strict policies and procedures to maintain a safe work environment.

Corporate Information

We are a Delaware corporation formed on May 4, 2016. CSS Productions, our predecessor and immediate parent company, was formed in December 2014 by CSS, and initiated operations in January 2015. We were formed to create a discrete entity focused on video content opportunities using the Brand. In May 2016, pursuant to the terms of the contribution agreement among CSS, CSS Productions and the Company (the "CSS Contribution Agreement"), all video content assets (the "Subject Assets") owned by CSS, CSS Productions and their CSS subsidiaries were transferred to the Company in consideration for its issuance to CSS Productions of 8,600,568 shares of the Company's Class B common stock. Since the date of the CSS Contribution Agreement, CSS Productions has transferred certain of these shares of Class B common stock to third parties and certain of these shares of Class B Common Stock have been converted into Class A Common Stock at the election of the holders thereof. Concurrently with the consummation of the CSS Contribution Agreement, certain rights to receive payments under certain agreements comprising part of the Subject Assets owned by Trema, LLC ("Trema"), a company principally owned and controlled by William J. Rouhana, Jr., the Company's chairman and chief executive officer, were assigned to the Company under a contribution agreement (the "Trema Contribution Agreement") in consideration for the Company's issuance to Trema of 159,432 shares of our Class B common stock. Thereafter, CSS Productions' operating activities ceased, and the Company continued the business operations of producing and distributing the video content.

Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company

We are an “emerging growth company,” as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 (the “JOBS Act”). As long as we are an emerging growth company, we are eligible to take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not emerging growth companies. These include, but are not limited to:

- Not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements in the assessment of our internal control over financial reporting;
- Not being required to comply with any requirement that may be adopted by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board regarding mandatory audit firm rotation or a supplement to the auditors’ report providing additional information about the audit and the financial statements;
- Reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation; and
- Exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and stockholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved.

We may remain an “emerging growth company” until as late as December 31, 2022, the fiscal year-end following the fifth anniversary of the completion of our initial public offering, though we may cease to be an emerging growth company earlier under certain circumstances, including if (a) we have more than \$1 billion in annual gross revenue in any fiscal year, (b) the market value of our common stock that is held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of any June 30 or (c) we issue more than \$1 billion of non-convertible debt over a three-year period.

The Securities We May Offer

We may offer up to \$13,000,000 of common stock, preferred stock, warrants, debt securities and/or units comprised of one or more of the foregoing classes of securities, in one or more offerings and in any combination. This prospectus provides you with a general description of the securities we may offer. A prospectus supplement, which we will provide each time we offer securities, will describe the specific amounts, prices and terms of these securities.

Common Stock

We have two classes of common stock which are substantially identical, except that the holders of Class A common stock are entitled to one vote for each share held of record on all matters to be voted on by stockholders and the holders of Class B common stock are entitled to ten votes for each share. Subject to any preferential rights of any outstanding preferred stock, holders of our Class A and Class B common stock are entitled to receive ratably the dividends, if any, as may be declared from time to time by the board of directors out of legally available funds. If there is a liquidation, dissolution or winding up of our company, holders of our Class A and Class B common stock would be entitled to share ratably in our net assets legally available for distribution to stockholders after the payment of all our debts and liabilities and any preferential rights of any outstanding preferred stock.

Preferred Stock

Our preferred stock will have such designations, rights and preferences as may be determined from time to time by our board of directors, without stockholder approval. We have summarized some of the general terms and provisions of the preferred stock that we may issue in “*Description of Capital Stock.*” A prospectus supplement will describe the particular terms of any series of preferred stock offered from time to time, and may supplement or change the terms outlined below.

Warrants

We may issue warrants for the purchase of common stock, preferred stock, debt securities or any other class of security offered hereby. We have summarized some of the general terms and provisions of the warrants that we may issue in “*Description of Warrants.*” A prospectus supplement will describe the particular terms of any warrants offered from time to time, and may supplement or change the terms outlined below.

Debt Securities

We may offer any combination of senior debt securities or subordinated debt securities. The subordinated debt securities generally will be entitled to payment only after payment of our senior debt. Senior debt securities will be unsubordinated obligations and will rank equal with all our other unsubordinated debt. We may issue the senior debt securities and the subordinated debt securities under separate indentures between us, as issuer, and the trustee or trustees identified in a prospectus supplement. We have summarized some of the general terms and provisions of the debt securities that we may issue in “*Description of Debt Securities.*” A prospectus supplement will describe the particular terms of any debt securities offered from time to time, and may supplement or change the terms outlined below.

Units

We may issue units comprised of one or more of the other classes of securities offered hereby in any combination. We have summarized some of the general terms and provisions of the units that we may issue in “*Description of Units.*” A prospectus supplement will describe the particular terms of any units offered from time to time, and may supplement or change the terms outlined below.

RISK FACTORS

Any investment in our securities involves a high degree of risk. Potential investors are urged to read and consider the risks and uncertainties relating to an investment in our company set forth under “*Risk Factors*” in the prospectus supplement relating to a particular offering, together with all of the other information contained or incorporated by reference in the prospectus supplement or contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus. Potential investors also should read and consider the risks and uncertainties discussed under the item “*Risk Factors*” in our annual report on Form 10-K and our quarterly reports on Form 10-Q, all of which are incorporated herein by reference, and may be amended, supplemented or superseded from time to time by other reports we file with the SEC in the future and any prospectus supplement related to a particular offering. Additional risks and uncertainties not presently known to us or that we currently deem immaterial may also affect our business and results of operations. If any of these risks actually occur, our business, financial condition or results of operations could be seriously harmed. In that event, the market price for our common stock could decline and you may lose all or part of your investment.

NOTE ON FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

The statements contained in this prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus that are not purely historical are forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements include, but are not limited to, statements regarding expectations, hopes, beliefs, intentions or strategies regarding the future. In addition, any statements that refer to projections, forecasts or other characterizations of future events or circumstances, including any underlying assumptions, are forward-looking statements. The words “anticipates,” “believes,” “continues,” “could,” “estimates,” “expects,” “intends,” “may,” “might,” “plans,” “possible,” “potential,” “predicts,” “projects,” “should,” “would” and similar expressions may identify forward-looking statements, but the absence of these words does not mean that a statement is not forward-looking. Forward-looking statements in this prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus may include, for example, statements about our:

- our limited operating history;
- our financial performance, including our ability to generate revenue;
- our inability to pay dividends if we fall out of compliance with our loan covenants in the future and then are prohibited by our bank lender from paying dividends
- ability of our content offerings to achieve market acceptance;
- success in retaining or recruiting, or changes required in, our officers, key employees or directors;
- potential ability to obtain additional financing when and if needed;
- ability to protect our intellectual property;
- ability to complete strategic acquisitions;
- ability to manage growth and integrate acquired operations;
- potential liquidity and trading of our securities;
- regulatory or operational risks;
- downward revisions to, or withdrawals of, our credit ratings by third-party rating agencies;
- our estimates regarding expenses, future revenue, capital requirements and needs for additional financing; and

the time during which we will be an Emerging Growth Company (“EGC”) under the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012, or JOBS Act.

The forward-looking statements contained in this prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus are based on current expectations and beliefs concerning future developments and their potential effects on us. There can be no assurance that future developments will be those that have been anticipated. These forward-looking statements involve a number of risks, uncertainties (some of which are beyond our control) or other assumptions that may cause actual results or performance to be materially different from those expressed or implied by these forward-looking statements. These risks and uncertainties include, but are not limited to, those factors incorporated by reference or described in “*Risk Factors*.” Should one or more of these risks or uncertainties materialize, or should any of our assumptions prove incorrect, actual results may vary in material respects from those projected in these forward-looking statements. We do not undertake any obligation to update or revise any forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise, except as may be required under applicable securities laws.

USE OF PROCEEDS

Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, the net proceeds from the sale of the securities offered hereby will be used for working capital and other general corporate purposes including dividends and share repurchases. Pending the application of such proceeds, we expect to invest the proceeds in short-term, interest bearing, investment-grade marketable securities or money market obligations.

DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK

Introduction

In the discussion that follows, we have summarized selected provisions of our certificate of incorporation, bylaws and the Delaware General Corporation Law, or “DGCL,” relating to our capital stock. This summary is not complete. This discussion is subject to the relevant provisions of Delaware law and is qualified in its entirety by reference to our certificate of incorporation and our bylaws. You should read the provisions of our certificate of incorporation and our bylaws as currently in effect for provisions that may be important to you.

General

We are authorized to issue 70 million shares of Class A common stock, par value \$.0001, 20 million shares of Class B common stock, par value \$.0001, and 10 million shares of preferred stock, par value \$.0001, of which 824,000 has been designated Series A Preferred Stock.

Pursuant to our financing plan prior to our initial public offering (“IPO”), we issued in several private placements an aggregate of 1,249,090 shares of our Class A common stock and 8,071,955 shares of our Class B common stock, as well as Class W warrants to purchase an aggregate of 678,822 shares of our Class A common stock and Class Z warrants to purchase an aggregate of 130,618 share of our Class A common stock. Certain of the shares of Class B common stock so issued have since been converted into shares of Class A common stock at the election of the holders of such shares and in accordance with the terms thereof.

On August 17, 2017, we completed our IPO consisting of 2,500,000 shares of Class A common stock at an offering price of \$12.00 per share. The shares of Class A common stock offered and sold in the IPO were comprised of (a) an aggregate of 2,241,983 shares of our newly issued Class A common stock and (b) an aggregate of 258,017 shares of issued and outstanding Class A common stock that were sold by certain non-management, non-affiliated existing stockholders.

On June 29, 2018, we completed the sale of 646,497 shares of our Series A Preferred Stock at an offering price of \$25.00 per share.

Our Class A common stock and Series A Preferred Stock were each approved for listing on the Nasdaq Global Market under the symbols “CSSE” and “CSSEP”, respectively.

As of the date of this prospectus, 3,798,454 shares of our Class A common stock are outstanding, 7,817,238 shares of our Class B common stock are outstanding and 780,497 shares of our Series A Preferred Stock are outstanding. We also have outstanding Class W warrants to purchase an aggregate of 678,822 shares of our Class A common stock and Class Z warrants to purchase an aggregate of 180,618 share of our Class A common stock.

Common Stock

Voting Rights

Holders of shares of Class A common stock and Class B common stock have substantially identical rights, except that holders of shares of Class A common stock are entitled to one vote per share and holders of shares of Class B common stock are entitled to ten votes per share. Holders of shares of Class A common stock and Class B common stock vote together as a single class on all matters (including the election of directors) submitted to a vote of stockholders, unless otherwise required by law or our charter. See “— *Certain Anti-Takeover Provisions of our Certificate of Incorporation and By-Laws,*” below. There is no cumulative voting with respect to the election of directors, with the result that the holders of more than 50% of the voting power voting for the election of directors can elect all of the directors.

Dividend Rights

Shares of Class A common stock and Class B common stock shall be treated equally, identically and ratably, on a per share basis, with respect to any dividends or distributions as may be declared and paid from time to time by the board of directors out of any assets legally available therefor.

No Preemptive or Similar Rights

Our common stock is not entitled to preemptive rights and is not subject to conversion, redemption or sinking fund provisions.

Right to Receive Liquidation Distributions

Subject to the preferential or other rights of any holders of preferred stock then outstanding, including the Series A Preferred Stock, upon our dissolution, liquidation or winding up, whether voluntary or involuntary, holders of Class A common stock and Class B common stock will be entitled to receive ratably all of our assets available for distribution to our stockholders unless disparate or different treatment of the shares of each such class with respect to distributions upon any such liquidation, dissolution or winding up is approved in advance by the affirmative vote (or written consent if action by written consent of stockholders is permitted at such time under our certificate of incorporation) of the holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of Class A common stock and Class B common stock, each voting separately as a class.

Merger or Consolidation

In the case of any distribution or payment in respect of the shares of Class A common stock or Class B common stock upon our consolidation or merger with or into any other entity, or in the case of any other transaction having an effect on stockholders substantially similar to that resulting from a consolidation or merger, such distribution or payment shall be made ratably on a per share basis among the holders of the Class A common stock and Class B common stock as a single class, *provided, however*, that shares of one such class may receive different or disproportionate distributions or payments in connection with such merger, consolidation or other transaction if (i) the only difference in the per share distribution to the holders of the Class A common stock and Class B common stock is that any securities distributed to the holder of a share Class B common stock have ten times the voting power of any securities distributed to the holder of a share of Class A common stock, or (ii) such merger, consolidation or other transaction is approved by the affirmative vote (or written consent if action by written consent of stockholders is permitted at such time under our Certificate of Incorporation) of the holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of Class A common stock and Class B common stock, each voting separately as a class.

Conversion

The outstanding shares of Class B common stock are convertible at any time as follows: (a) at the option of the holder, a share of Class B common stock may be converted at any time into one share of Class A common stock or (b) upon the election of the holders of a majority of the then outstanding shares of Class B common stock, all outstanding shares of Class B common stock may be converted into shares of Class A common stock. Once converted into Class A common stock, the Class B common stock will not be reissued.

Warrants

Each outstanding Class W warrant entitles the registered holder to purchase one share of our Class A common stock at a price of \$7.50 per share, subject to adjustment as discussed below. Each warrant is exercisable at any time through June 30, 2021 at 5:00 p.m., New York City time. As of the date of this prospectus, we have outstanding Class W warrants to purchase an aggregate of 678,822 shares of Class A common stock.

Each outstanding Class Z warrant entitles the registered holder to purchase one share of our Class A common stock at a price of \$12.00 per share, subject to adjustment as discussed below. Each warrant is exercisable at any time through June 30, 2022 at 5:00 p.m., New York City time. As of the date of this prospectus, we have outstanding Class Z warrants to purchase an aggregate of 180,618 shares of Class A common stock.

Cancellation

We may call for cancellation of all or any portion of the Class W warrants or Class Z warrants for which a notice of exercise has not yet been delivered to us for consideration equal to \$.01 per Class W warrant or Class Z warrant, as the case may be, in accordance with the provisions of such warrants, if (i) our Class A common stock is traded, listed or quoted on any U.S. market or electronic exchange, and (ii) the closing per-share sales price of the Class A common stock for any twenty (20) trading days during a consecutive thirty (30) trading days period exceeds \$15.00, for Class W warrants, or \$18.00, for Class Z warrants, in each case subject to adjustment for forward and reverse stock splits, recapitalizations, stock dividends and the like.

The right to exercise will be forfeited unless the warrants are exercised prior to the date specified in the call notice. On and after the call date, a record holder of a warrant will have no further rights except to receive the call price for such holder's warrant upon surrender of such warrant.

The criteria for calling our warrants have been established at a price which is intended to provide warrant holders a reasonable premium to the initial exercise price and provide a sufficient differential between the then-prevailing share price and the warrant exercise price so that if the share price declines as a result of our call, the call will not cause the share price to drop below the exercise price of the warrants.

Exercise Rights

Holders of the Class W warrants and Class Z warrants have cashless exercise rights that allow each holder to pay the exercise price by surrendering the warrants for that number of shares of common stock equal to the quotient obtained by dividing (x) the product of the number of shares of Class A common stock underlying the warrants, multiplied by the difference between the exercise price of the warrants and the "fair market value" by (y) the fair market value. The "fair market value" for this purpose will mean the average reported last sale price of the shares of common stock for the ten trading days ending on the trading day prior to the date of exercise.

The exercise price and number of shares of Class A common stock issuable on exercise of the warrants may be adjusted in certain circumstances including in the event of a share dividend, extraordinary dividend or our recapitalization, reorganization, merger or consolidation. However, neither the Class W warrants nor the Class Z warrants will be adjusted for issuances of shares of any equity or equity-based securities at a price below their respective exercise prices.

The Class W warrants and Class Z warrants may be exercised upon surrender of the warrant certificate on or prior to the expiration date at the offices of the warrant agent, with the exercise form on the reverse side of the warrant certificate completed and executed as indicated, accompanied by full payment of the exercise price, by certified or official bank check or wire transfer payable to us, for the number of warrants being exercised. The warrant holders do not have the rights or privileges of holders of shares of common stock and any voting rights until they exercise their warrants and receive shares of Class A common stock. After the issuance of shares of common stock upon exercise of the warrants, each holder will be entitled to one vote for each share held of record on all matters to be voted on by stockholders.

No fractional shares will be issued upon exercise of the Class W warrants or Class Z warrants. If, upon exercise, a holder would be entitled to receive a fractional interest in a share, we will, upon exercise, round up to the nearest whole number the number of shares of Class A common stock to be issued to the warrant holder.

Preferred Stock

Our board of directors is authorized, subject to limitations prescribed by Delaware law, to issue preferred stock in one or more series, to establish from time to time the number of shares to be included in each series, and to fix the designation, powers, preferences and rights of the shares of each series and any of its qualifications, limitations or restrictions, in each case without further vote or action by our stockholders. Our board of directors can also increase (but not above the total number of authorized shares of the class) or decrease (but not below the number of shares then outstanding) the number of shares of any series of preferred stock, without any further vote or action by our stockholders. Our board of directors may authorize the issuance of preferred stock with voting or conversion rights that could adversely affect the voting power or other rights of the holders of our common stock or other series of preferred stock. The issuance of preferred stock, while providing flexibility in connection with possible financings, acquisitions and other corporate purposes, could, among other things, have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change in our control of our company and might adversely affect the market price of our common stock and the voting and other rights of the holders of our common stock.

Series A Preferred Stock

The description of certain terms of the 9.75% Series A Cumulative Redeemable Perpetual Preferred Stock in this prospectus does not purport to be complete and is in all respects subject to, and qualified in its entirety by references to the relevant provisions of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation, the certificate of designations establishing the terms of our Series A Preferred Stock, our bylaws and the DGCL. Copies of our certificate of incorporation, certificate of designations, bylaws and all amendments thereto, are available from us upon request.

General

On June 29, 2018, we completed an underwritten public offering of our Series A Preferred Stock at an offering price of \$25.00 per share. We initially sold 600,000 shares of Series A Preferred Stock and, on July 10, 2018, we sold an additional 46,497 shares of Series A Preferred Stock as a result of the partial exercise of the underwriters' over-allotment option. The sale of Series A Preferred Stock generated aggregate net proceeds to us of approximately \$14.8 million.

As of the date of this prospectus, 780,497 shares of our Series A Preferred Stock are outstanding.

Our board of directors may, without the approval of holders of the Series A Preferred Stock or our common stock, designate additional series of authorized preferred stock ranking junior to or on parity with the Series A Preferred Stock or designate additional shares of the Series A Preferred Stock and authorize the issuance of such shares. Designation of preferred stock ranking senior to the Series A Preferred Stock will require approval of the holders of Series A Preferred Stock, as described below in "Voting Rights."

The registrar, transfer agent and dividend and redemption price disbursing agent in respect of the Series A Preferred Stock is Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company.

Listing

Our Series A Preferred Stock has been approved for listing on the Nasdaq Global Market under the symbol "CSSEP".

No Maturity, Sinking Fund or Mandatory Redemption

The Series A Preferred Stock has no stated maturity and will not be subject to any sinking fund or mandatory redemption. Shares of the Series A Preferred Stock will remain outstanding indefinitely unless we decide to redeem or otherwise repurchase them. We are not required to set aside funds to redeem the Series A Preferred Stock.

Ranking

The Series A Preferred Stock will rank, with respect to rights to the payment of dividends and the distribution of assets upon our liquidation, dissolution or winding up:

- senior to all classes or series of our common stock and to all other equity securities issued by us other than equity securities referred to in the next two bullet points below;
- on a parity with all equity securities issued by us with terms specifically providing that those equity securities rank on a parity with the Series A Preferred Stock with respect to rights to the payment of dividends and the distribution of assets upon our liquidation, dissolution or winding up;
- junior to all equity securities issued by us with terms specifically providing for ranking senior to the Series A Preferred Stock with respect to rights to the payment of dividends and the distribution of assets upon our liquidation, dissolution or winding up (please see the section entitled “Voting Rights” below); and
- effectively junior to all our existing and future indebtedness (including indebtedness convertible to our common stock or preferred stock) and to any indebtedness and other liabilities of (as well as any preferred equity interests held by others in) our existing subsidiaries.

Dividends

Holders of shares of the Series A Preferred Stock are entitled to receive, when, as and if declared by our board of directors, out of funds of the Company legally available for the payment of dividends, cumulative cash dividends at the rate of 9.75% of the \$25.00 per share liquidation preference per annum (equivalent to \$2.4375 per annum per share). Dividends on the Series A Preferred Stock shall be payable monthly on the 15th day of each month; provided that if any dividend payment date is not a business day, as defined in the certificate of designations, then the dividend that would otherwise have been payable on that dividend payment date may be paid on the next succeeding business day and no interest, additional dividends or other sums will accrue on the amount so payable for the period from and after that dividend payment date to that next succeeding business day. Any dividend payable on the Series A Preferred Stock, including dividends payable for any partial dividend period, will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year consisting of twelve 30-day months; however, the shares of Series A Preferred Stock offered hereby will be credited as having accrued dividends since the first day of the calendar month in which they are issued. Dividends will be payable to holders of record as they appear in our stock records for the Series A Preferred Stock at the close of business on the applicable record date, which shall be the last day of the calendar month, whether or not a business day, immediately preceding the month in which the applicable dividend payment date falls. As a result, holders of shares of Series A Preferred Stock will not be entitled to receive dividends on a dividend payment date if such shares were not issued and outstanding on the applicable dividend record date.

No dividends on shares of Series A Preferred Stock shall be authorized by our board of directors or paid or set apart for payment by us at any time when the terms and provisions of any agreement of ours, including any agreement relating to our indebtedness, prohibit the authorization, payment or setting apart for payment thereof or provide that the authorization, payment or setting apart for payment thereof would constitute a breach of the agreement or a default under the agreement, or if the authorization, payment or setting apart for payment shall be restricted or prohibited by law.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, dividends on the Series A Preferred Stock will accrue whether or not we have earnings, whether or not there are funds legally available for the payment of those dividends and whether or not those dividends are declared by our board of directors. No interest, or sum in lieu of interest, will be payable in respect of any dividend payment or payments on the Series A Preferred Stock that may be in arrears, and holders of the Series A Preferred Stock will not be entitled to any dividends in excess of full cumulative dividends described above. Any dividend payment made on the Series A Preferred Stock shall first be credited against the earliest accumulated but unpaid dividend due with respect to those shares.

Future distributions on our common stock and preferred stock, including the Series A Preferred Stock will be at the discretion of our board of directors and will depend on, among other things, our results of operations, cash flow from operations, financial condition and capital requirements, any debt service requirements and any other factors our board of directors deems relevant. Accordingly, we cannot guarantee that we will be able to make cash distributions on our preferred stock or what the actual distributions will be for any future period.

Unless full cumulative dividends on all shares of Series A Preferred Stock have been or contemporaneously are declared and paid or declared and a sum sufficient for the payment thereof has been or contemporaneously is set apart for payment for all past dividend periods, no dividends (other than in shares of common stock or in shares of any series of preferred stock that we may issue ranking junior to the Series A Preferred Stock as to the payment of dividends and the distribution of assets upon liquidation, dissolution or winding up) shall be declared or paid or set aside for payment upon shares of our common stock or preferred stock that we may issue ranking junior to, or on a parity with, the Series A Preferred Stock as to the payment of dividends or the distribution of assets upon liquidation, dissolution or winding up. Nor shall any other distribution be declared or made upon shares of our common stock or preferred stock that we may issue ranking junior to, or on a parity with, the Series A Preferred Stock as to the payment of dividends or the distribution of assets upon liquidation, dissolution or winding up. Also, any shares of our common stock or preferred stock that we may issue ranking junior to or on a parity with the Series A Preferred Stock as to the payment of dividends or the distribution of assets upon liquidation, dissolution or winding up shall not be redeemed, purchased or otherwise acquired for any consideration (or any moneys paid to or made available for a sinking fund for the redemption of any such shares) by us (except by conversion into or exchange for our other capital stock that we may issue ranking junior to the Series A Preferred Stock as to the payment of dividends and the distribution of assets upon liquidation, dissolution or winding up).

When dividends are not paid in full (or a sum sufficient for such full payment is not so set apart) upon the Series A Preferred Stock and the shares of any other series of preferred stock that we may issue ranking on a parity as to the payment of dividends with the Series A Preferred Stock, all dividends declared upon the Series A Preferred Stock and any other series of preferred stock that we may issue ranking on a parity as to the payment of dividends with the Series A Preferred Stock shall be declared pro rata so that the amount of dividends declared per share of Series A Preferred Stock and such other series of preferred stock that we may issue shall in all cases bear to each other the same ratio that accrued dividends per share on the Series A Preferred Stock and such other series of preferred stock that we may issue (which shall not include any accrual in respect of unpaid dividends for prior dividend periods if such preferred stock does not have a cumulative dividend) bear to each other. No interest, or sum of money in lieu of interest, shall be payable in respect of any dividend payment or payments on the Series A Preferred Stock that may be in arrears.

Liquidation Preference

In the event of our voluntary or involuntary liquidation, dissolution or winding up, the holders of shares of Series A Preferred Stock will be entitled to be paid out of the assets we have legally available for distribution to our shareholders, subject to the preferential rights of the holders of any class or series of our capital stock we may issue ranking senior to the Series A Preferred Stock with respect to the distribution of assets upon liquidation, dissolution or winding up, a liquidation preference of \$25.00 per share, plus an amount equal to any accumulated and unpaid dividends to, but not including, the date of payment, before any distribution of assets is made to holders of our common stock or any other class or series of our capital stock we may issue that ranks junior to the Series A Preferred Stock as to liquidation rights.

In the event that, upon any such voluntary or involuntary liquidation, dissolution or winding up, our available assets are insufficient to pay the amount of the liquidating distributions on all outstanding shares of Series A Preferred Stock and the corresponding amounts payable on all shares of other classes or series of our capital stock that we may issue ranking on a parity with the Series A Preferred Stock in the distribution of assets, then the holders of the Series A Preferred Stock and all other such classes or series of capital stock shall share ratably in any such distribution of assets in proportion to the full liquidating distributions to which they would otherwise be respectively entitled.

We will use commercially reasonable efforts to provide written notice of any such liquidation, dissolution or winding up no fewer than 10 days prior to the payment date. After payment of the full amount of the liquidating distributions to which they are entitled, the holders of Series A Preferred Stock will have no right or claim to any of our remaining assets. The consolidation or merger of us with or into any other corporation, trust or entity or of any other entity with or into us, or the sale, lease, transfer or conveyance of all or substantially all of our property or business, shall not be deemed a liquidation, dissolution or winding up of us (although such events may give rise to the special optional redemption to the extent described below).

Redemption

The Series A Preferred Stock is not redeemable by us prior to June 27, 2023, except as described below under “—*Special Optional Redemption*.”

Optional Redemption. On and after June 27, 2023, we may, at our option, upon not less than 30 nor more than 60 days’ written notice, redeem the Series A Preferred Stock, in whole or in part, at any time or from time to time, for cash at a redemption price equal to \$25.00 per share, plus any accumulated and unpaid dividends thereon to, but not including, the date fixed for redemption.

Special Optional Redemption. Upon the occurrence of a Change of Control, we may, at our option, upon not less than 30 nor more than 60 days’ written notice, redeem the Series A Preferred Stock, in whole or in part, within 120 days after the first date on which such Change of Control occurred, for cash at a redemption price of \$25.00 per share, plus any accumulated and unpaid dividends thereon to, but not including, the redemption date.

A “Change of Control” is deemed to occur when the following have occurred and are continuing:

- the acquisition by any person, including any syndicate or group deemed to be a “person” under Section 13(d)(3) of the Exchange Act (other than Mr. Rouhana, the chairman of our board of directors, our chief executive officer and our principal stockholder, any member of his immediate family, and any “person” or “group” under Section 13(d)(3) of the Exchange Act, that is controlled by Mr. Rouhana or any member of his immediate family, any beneficiary of the estate of Mr. Rouhana, or any trust, partnership, corporate or other entity controlled by any of the foregoing), of beneficial ownership, directly or indirectly, through a purchase, merger or other acquisition transaction or series of purchases, mergers or other acquisition transactions of our stock entitling that person to exercise more than 50% of the total voting power of all our stock entitled to vote generally in the election of our directors (except that such person will be deemed to have beneficial ownership of all securities that such person has the right to acquire, whether such right is currently exercisable or is exercisable only upon the occurrence of a subsequent condition); and
- following the closing of any transaction referred to above, neither we nor the acquiring or surviving entity has a class of common securities (or American Depositary Receipts representing such securities) listed on the NYSE, the NYSE American, or Nasdaq, or listed or quoted on an exchange or quotation system that is a successor to the NYSE, the NYSE American, or Nasdaq.

Redemption Procedures. In the event we elect to redeem Series A Preferred Stock, the notice of redemption will be mailed to each holder of record of Series A Preferred Stock called for redemption at such holder's address as it appears on our stock transfer records, not less than 30 nor more than 60 days prior to the redemption date, and will state the following:

- the redemption date;
- the number of shares of Series A Preferred Stock to be redeemed;
- the redemption price;
- the place or places where certificates (if any) for the Series A Preferred Stock are to be surrendered for payment of the redemption price;
- that dividends on the shares to be redeemed will cease to accumulate on the redemption date;
- whether such redemption is being made pursuant to the provisions described above under "*—Optional Redemption*" or "*—Special Optional Redemption*"; and
- if applicable, that such redemption is being made in connection with a Change of Control and, in that case, a brief description of the transaction or transactions constituting such Change of Control.

If less than all of the Series A Preferred Stock held by any holder are to be redeemed, the notice mailed to such holder shall also specify the number of shares of Series A Preferred Stock held by such holder to be redeemed. No failure to give such notice or any defect thereto or in the mailing thereof shall affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of any shares of Series A Preferred Stock except as to the holder to whom notice was defective or not given.

Holders of Series A Preferred Stock to be redeemed shall surrender the Series A Preferred Stock at the place designated in the notice of redemption and shall be entitled to the redemption price and any accumulated and unpaid dividends payable upon the redemption following the surrender. If notice of redemption of any shares of Series A Preferred Stock has been given and if we have irrevocably set aside the funds necessary for redemption in trust for the benefit of the holders of the shares of Series A Preferred Stock so called for redemption, then from and after the redemption date (unless default shall be made by us in providing for the payment of the redemption price plus accumulated and unpaid dividends, if any), dividends will cease to accrue on those shares of Series A Preferred Stock, those shares of Series A Preferred Stock shall no longer be deemed outstanding and all rights of the holders of those shares will terminate, except the right to receive the redemption price plus accumulated and unpaid dividends, if any, payable upon redemption. If any redemption date is not a business day, then the redemption price and accumulated and unpaid dividends, if any, payable upon redemption may be paid on the next business day and no interest, additional dividends or other sums will accrue on the amount payable for the period from and after that redemption date to that next business day. If less than all of the outstanding Series A Preferred Stock is to be redeemed, the Series A Preferred Stock to be redeemed shall be selected pro rata (as nearly as may be practicable without creating fractional shares) or by any other equitable method we determine.

In connection with any redemption of Series A Preferred Stock, we shall pay, in cash, any accumulated and unpaid dividends to, but not including, the redemption date, unless a redemption date falls after a dividend record date and prior to the corresponding dividend payment date, in which case each holder of Series A Preferred Stock at the close of business on such dividend record date shall be entitled to the dividend payable on such shares on the corresponding dividend payment date notwithstanding the redemption of such shares before such dividend payment date. Except as provided above, we will make no payment or allowance for unpaid dividends, whether or not in arrears, on shares of the Series A Preferred Stock to be redeemed.

No shares of Series A Preferred Stock shall be redeemed unless full cumulative dividends on all shares of Series A Preferred Stock have been or contemporaneously are declared and paid and all outstanding shares of Series A Preferred Stock are simultaneously redeemed. We shall not otherwise purchase or acquire directly or indirectly any shares of Series A Preferred Stock (except by exchanging it for our capital stock ranking junior to the Series A Preferred Stock as to the payment of dividends and distribution of assets upon liquidation, dissolution or winding up); provided, however, that the foregoing shall not prevent the purchase or acquisition by us of shares of Series A Preferred Stock pursuant to a purchase or exchange offer made on the same terms to holders of all outstanding shares of Series A Preferred Stock.

Subject to applicable law, we may purchase shares of Series A Preferred Stock in the open market, by tender or by private agreement. Any shares of Series A Preferred Stock that we acquire may be retired and reclassified as authorized but unissued shares of preferred stock, without designation as to class or series, and may thereafter be reissued as any class or series of preferred stock.

Voting Rights

Holders of the Series A Preferred Stock do not have any voting rights, except as set forth below or as otherwise required by law.

On each matter on which holders of Series A Preferred Stock are entitled to vote, each share of Series A Preferred Stock will be entitled to one vote. In instances described below where holders of Series A Preferred Stock vote with holders of any other class or series of our preferred stock as a single class on any matter, the Series A Preferred Stock and the shares of each such other class or series will have one vote for each \$25.00 of liquidation preference (excluding accumulated dividends) represented by their respective shares.

Whenever dividends on any shares of Series A Preferred Stock are in arrears for eighteen or more monthly dividend periods, whether or not consecutive, the number of directors constituting our board of directors will be automatically increased by two (if not already increased by two by reason of the election of directors by the holders of any other class or series of our preferred stock we may issue upon which like voting rights have been conferred and are exercisable and with which the Series A Preferred Stock is entitled to vote as a class with respect to the election of those two directors) and the holders of Series A Preferred Stock (voting separately as a class with all other classes or series of preferred stock we may issue upon which like voting rights have been conferred and are exercisable and which are entitled to vote as a class with the Series A Preferred Stock in the election of those two directors) will be entitled to vote for the election of those two additional directors (the "preferred stock directors") at a special meeting called by us at the request of the holders of record of at least 25% of the outstanding shares of Series A Preferred Stock or by the holders of any other class or series of preferred stock upon which like voting rights have been conferred and are exercisable and which are entitled to vote as a class with the Series A Preferred Stock in the election of those two preferred stock directors (unless the request is received less than 90 days before the date fixed for the next annual or special meeting of shareholders, in which case, such vote will be held at the earlier of the next annual or special meeting of shareholders), and at each subsequent annual meeting until all dividends accumulated on the Series A Preferred Stock for all past dividend periods and the then current dividend period have been fully paid or declared and a sum sufficient for the payment thereof set aside for payment. In that case, the right of holders of the Series A Preferred Stock to elect any directors will cease and, unless there are other classes or series of our preferred stock upon which like voting rights have been conferred and are exercisable, any preferred stock directors elected by holders of the Series A Preferred Stock shall immediately resign and the number of directors constituting the board of directors shall be reduced accordingly. In no event shall the holders of Series A Preferred Stock be entitled under these voting rights to elect a preferred stock director that would cause us to fail to satisfy a requirement relating to director independence of any national securities exchange or quotation system on which any class or series of our capital stock is listed or quoted. For the avoidance of doubt, in no event shall the total number of preferred stock directors elected by holders of the Series A Preferred Stock (voting separately as a class with all other classes or series of preferred stock we may issue upon which like voting rights have been conferred and are exercisable and which are entitled to vote as a class with the Series A Preferred Stock in the election of such directors) under these voting rights exceed two. Any person nominated to serve as a director of our company under the foregoing terms shall be reasonably acceptable to our company.

If a special meeting is not called by us within 30 days after request from the holders of Series A Preferred Stock as described above, then the holders of record of at least 25% of the outstanding Series A Preferred Stock may designate a holder to call the meeting at our expense.

If, at any time when the voting rights conferred upon the Series A Preferred Stock are exercisable, any vacancy in the office of a preferred stock director shall occur, then such vacancy may be filled only by a written consent of the remaining preferred stock director, or if none remains in office, by vote of the holders of record of the outstanding Series A Preferred Stock and any other classes or series of preferred stock upon which like voting rights have been conferred and are exercisable and which are entitled to vote as a class with the Series A Preferred Stock in the election of the preferred stock directors. Any preferred stock director elected or appointed may be removed only by the affirmative vote of holders of the outstanding Series A Preferred Stock and any other classes or series of preferred stock upon which like voting rights have been conferred and are exercisable and which classes or series of preferred stock are entitled to vote as a class with the Series A Preferred Stock in the election of the preferred stock directors, such removal to be effected by the affirmative vote of a majority of the votes entitled to be cast by the holders of the outstanding Series A Preferred Stock and any such other classes or series of preferred stock, and may not be removed by the holders of the common stock.

So long as any shares of Series A Preferred Stock remain outstanding, we will not, without the affirmative vote or consent of the holders of at least 66.67% of the votes entitled to be cast by the holders of the Series A Preferred Stock outstanding at the time, given in person or by proxy, either in writing or at a meeting (voting together as a class with all other series of parity preferred stock that we may issue upon which like voting rights have been conferred and are exercisable), (a) authorize or create, or increase the authorized or issued amount of, any class or series of capital stock ranking senior to the Series A Preferred Stock with respect to payment of dividends or the distribution of assets upon liquidation, dissolution or winding up or reclassify any of our authorized capital stock into such shares, or create, authorize or issue any obligation or security convertible into or evidencing the right to purchase any such shares; or (b) unless redeeming all Series A Preferred Stock in connection with such action, amend, alter, repeal or replace our amended and restated certificate of incorporation, including by way of a merger, consolidation or otherwise in which we may or may not be the surviving entity, so as to materially and adversely affect and deprive holders of Series A Preferred Stock of any right, preference, privilege or voting power of the Series A Preferred Stock (each, an "Event"). An increase in the amount of the authorized preferred stock, including the Series A Preferred Stock, or the creation or issuance of any additional Series A Preferred Stock or other series of preferred stock that we may issue, or any increase in the amount of authorized shares of such series, in each case ranking on a parity with or junior to the Series A Preferred Stock with respect to payment of dividends or the distribution of assets upon liquidation, dissolution or winding up, shall not be deemed an Event and will not require us to obtain 66.67% of the votes entitled to be cast by the holders of the Series A Preferred Stock and all such other similarly affected series, outstanding at the time (voting together as a class).

The foregoing voting provisions will not apply if, at or prior to the time when the act with respect to which such vote would otherwise be required shall be affected, all outstanding shares of Series A Preferred Stock shall have been redeemed or called for redemption upon proper notice and sufficient funds shall have been deposited in trust to affect such redemption.

Except as expressly stated in the certificate of designations or as may be required by applicable law, the Series A Preferred Stock do not have any relative, participating, optional or other special voting rights or powers and the consent of the holders thereof shall not be required for the taking of any corporate action.

Information Rights

During any period in which we are not subject to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act and any shares of Series A Preferred Stock are outstanding, we will use our best efforts to (i) make available on our corporate investor webpage, copies of the Annual Reports on Form 10-K and Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q that we would have been required to file with the SEC pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act if we were subject thereto (other than any exhibits that would have been required) and (ii) promptly, upon request, supply copies of such reports to any holders of Series A Preferred Stock. We will use our best effort to provide the information to the holders of the Series A Preferred Stock within 15 days after the respective dates by which a periodic report on Form 10-K or Form 10-Q, as the case may be, in respect of such information would have been required to be filed with the SEC, if we were subject to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act, in each case, based on the dates on which we would be required to file such periodic reports if we were a “non-accelerated filer” within the meaning of the Exchange Act.

No Conversion Rights

The Series A Preferred Stock is not convertible into our common stock or any other security.

No Preemptive Rights

No holders of the Series A Preferred Stock will, as holders of Series A Preferred Stock, have any preemptive rights to purchase or subscribe for our common stock or any other security.

Book-Entry Procedures

DTC acts as securities depository for our outstanding Series A Preferred Stock. With respect to the Series A Preferred Stock offered hereunder, we will issue one or more fully registered global securities certificates in the name of DTC’s nominee, Cede & Co. These certificates will represent the total aggregate number of shares of Series A Preferred Stock. We will deposit these certificates with DTC or a custodian appointed by DTC. We will not issue certificates to you for the shares of Series A Preferred Stock that you purchase, unless DTC’s services are discontinued as described below.

Title to book-entry interests in the Series A Preferred Stock will pass by book-entry registration of the transfer within the records of DTC in accordance with its procedures. Book-entry interests in the securities may be transferred within DTC in accordance with procedures established for these purposes by DTC. Each person owning a beneficial interest in shares of the Series A Preferred Stock must rely on the procedures of DTC and the participant through which such person owns its interest to exercise its rights as a holder of the Series A Preferred Stock.

DTC has advised us that it is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a “clearing corporation” within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code and a “clearing agency” registered under the provisions of Section 17A of the Exchange Act. DTC holds securities that its participants (“Direct Participants”) deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the settlement among Direct Participants of securities transactions, such as transfers and pledges in deposited securities through electronic computerized book-entry changes in Direct Participants’ accounts, thereby eliminating the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as securities brokers and dealers, including the underwriters, banks and trust companies that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly (“Indirect Participants”). The rules applicable to DTC and its Direct and Indirect Participants are on file with the SEC.

When you purchase shares of Series A Preferred Stock within the DTC system, the purchase must be by or through a Direct Participant. The Direct Participant will receive a credit for the Series A Preferred Stock on DTC's records. You will be considered to be the "beneficial owner" of the Series A Preferred Stock. Your beneficial ownership interest will be recorded on the Direct and Indirect Participants' records, but DTC will have no knowledge of your individual ownership. DTC's records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts shares of Series A Preferred Stock are credited.

You will not receive written confirmation from DTC of your purchase. The Direct or Indirect Participants through whom you purchased the Series A Preferred Stock should send you written confirmations providing details of your transactions, as well as periodic statements of your holdings. The Direct and Indirect Participants are responsible for keeping an accurate account of the holdings of their customers like you.

Transfers of ownership interests held through Direct and Indirect Participants will be accomplished by entries on the books of Direct and Indirect Participants acting on behalf of the beneficial owners.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to beneficial owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time.

We understand that, under DTC's existing practices, in the event that we request any action of the holders, or an owner of a beneficial interest in a global security, such as you, desires to take any action that a holder is entitled to take under our amended and restated certificate of incorporation (including the certificate of designations designating the Series A Preferred Stock), DTC would authorize the Direct Participants holding the relevant shares to take such action, and those Direct Participants and any Indirect Participants would authorize beneficial owners owning through those Direct and Indirect Participants to take such action or would otherwise act upon the instructions of beneficial owners owning through them.

Any redemption notices with respect to the Series A Preferred Stock will be sent to Cede & Co. If less than all of the outstanding shares of Series A Preferred Stock are being redeemed, DTC will reduce each Direct Participant's holdings of shares of Series A Preferred Stock in accordance with its procedures.

In those instances where a vote is required, neither DTC nor Cede & Co. itself will consent or vote with respect to the shares of Series A Preferred Stock. Under its usual procedures, DTC would mail an omnibus proxy to us as soon as possible after the record date. The omnibus proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants whose accounts the shares of Series A Preferred Stock are credited to on the record date, which are identified in a listing attached to the omnibus proxy.

Dividends on the Series A Preferred Stock are made directly to DTC's nominee (or its successor, if applicable). DTC's practice is to credit participants' accounts on the relevant payment date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC's records unless DTC has reason to believe that it will not receive payment on that payment date.

Payments by Direct and Indirect Participants to beneficial owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name." These payments will be the responsibility of the participant and not of DTC, us or any agent of ours.

DTC may discontinue providing its services as securities depository with respect to the Series A Preferred Stock at any time by giving reasonable notice to us. Additionally, we may decide to discontinue the book-entry only system of transfers with respect to the Series A Preferred Stock. In that event, we will print and deliver certificates in fully registered form for the Series A Preferred Stock. If DTC notifies us that it is unwilling to continue as securities depository, or it is unable to continue or ceases to be a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act and a successor depository is not appointed by us within 90 days after receiving such notice or becoming aware that DTC is no longer so registered, we will issue the Series A Preferred Stock in definitive form, at our expense, upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, such global security.

According to DTC, the foregoing information with respect to DTC has been provided to the financial community for informational purposes only and is not intended to serve as a representation, warranty or contract modification of any kind.

Global Clearance and Settlement Procedures

Initial settlement for the Series A Preferred Stock will be made in immediately available funds. Secondary market trading among DTC's participants occurs in the ordinary way in accordance with DTC's rules and will be settled in immediately available funds using DTC's Same-Day Funds Settlement System.

Certain Anti-Takeover Provisions of our Certificate of Incorporation and By-Laws

Special meeting of stockholders

Our bylaws provide that special meetings of our stockholders may be called only by a majority vote of our board of directors, or by our chairman and chief executive officer or by our secretary at the request in writing of stockholders owning a majority of the voting power of our issued and outstanding capital stock.

Advance notice requirements for stockholder proposals and director nominations

Our bylaws provide that stockholders seeking to bring business before our annual meeting of stockholders, or to nominate candidates for election as directors at our annual meeting of stockholders must provide timely notice of their intent in writing. To be timely, a stockholder's notice will need to be delivered to our principal executive offices not later than the close of business on the 60th day nor earlier than the close of business on the 90th day prior to the scheduled date of the annual meeting of stockholders. In the event that less than 70 days' notice or prior public disclosure of the date of the annual meeting of stockholders is given, a stockholder's notice shall be timely if delivered to our principal executive offices not later than the 10th day following the day on which public announcement of the date of our annual meeting of stockholders is first made or sent by us. Our bylaws also specify certain requirements as to the form and content of a stockholders' meeting. These provisions may preclude our stockholders from bringing matters before our annual meeting of stockholders or from making nominations for directors at our annual meeting of stockholders.

Dual Voting Structure

Our certificate of incorporation provides for two classes of common stock. Holders of shares of Class A common stock and Class B common stock have substantially identical rights, except that holders of shares of Class A common stock are entitled to one vote per share and holders of shares of Class B common stock are entitled to ten votes per share. Holders of shares of Class A common stock and Class B common stock vote together as a single class on all matters (including the election of directors) submitted to a vote of stockholders, unless otherwise required by law. Accordingly, the holders of shares of Class B common stock will exert significant control over our actions.

Removal and Appointment of Directors

Our entire board of directors or any individual director may be removed from office with or without cause by a majority vote of the holders of the voting power of outstanding voting power of the shares then entitled to vote at an election of directors. In such case, new directors may be elected by the stockholders then holding a majority of our voting power. Immediately following this offering, our chairman and chief executive officer shall control the substantial majority of our voting power and therefore will be able to unilaterally exercise the foregoing rights.

Class B Approval Required for Charter Amendments

Any amendment to our certificate of incorporation requires the approval of the majority of the outstanding Class B common stock. This approval requirement is separate and in addition to any general stockholder approval that would be required under our certificate of incorporation and law.

Exclusive Forum Selection

Our certificate of incorporation requires, to the fullest extent permitted by law, that derivative actions brought in our name, actions against directors, officers and employees for breach of fiduciary duty and other similar actions may be brought only in the Court of Chancery in the State of Delaware and, if brought outside of Delaware, the stockholder bringing the suit will be deemed to have consented to service of process on such stockholder's counsel. Although we believe this provision benefits our company by providing increased consistency in the application of Delaware law in the types of lawsuits to which it applies, the provision may have the effect of discouraging lawsuits against our and officers.

Repurchases

On March 27, 2018, the board of directors approved a stock repurchase program that enabled us to repurchase up to \$5 million of our Class A common stock through various means, including open market transactions in compliance with Rule 10b-18 under the Exchange Act, privately negotiated transactions, tender offers or any combination thereof. Repurchases under the program are funded from existing cash and cash equivalents, future cash flow, and equity or debt financings. As of September 27, 2018, the Company repurchased 74,235 shares of Class A common stock at a cost of approximately \$633,000.

Lock-Up Agreements

Each of our parent stockholder and its affiliates, directors and executive officers and a former executive officer (collectively, the "Insiders") entered into an agreement with us in connection with our IPO pursuant to which he, she or it has agreed to not sell, transfer or otherwise dispose of any Company securities prior to February 18, 2019. After such time, the lock-up will automatically end with respect to 1/24 of each class of the Company securities owned by such holder on each monthly anniversary date of the expiration of the lock-up period.

We may elect to release any holder from its lock-up at any time or from time to time for any reason or no reason with respect to any or all of the Company securities or any portion thereof. No such release shall be deemed to obligate us to grant any future releases to such holder or any other holder.

Dividends

Common Stock

On August 10, 2018, we paid a one-time special dividend of \$0.45 per share on our outstanding common stock, totaling approximately \$5.2 million, of which approximately \$3.4 million was paid to CSS as a holder of Class B common stock.

The payment of future cash dividends to our holders of common stock will be dependent upon our revenues and earnings, if any, capital requirements, and our general financial condition and will be within the discretion of our board of directors.

Series A Preferred Stock

We are generally required to pay monthly cash dividends on our Series A preferred stock as described above under "—Series A Preferred Stock – Dividends." We paid regular monthly dividends of \$.2031 per share of Series A Preferred Stock for each of the months of June, July, August, and September, 2018.

Limitation on Directors' Liability and Indemnification

Our certificate of incorporation provides that no director of ours will be personally liable to us or any of our stockholders for monetary damages arising from the director's breach of fiduciary duty as a director. However, this does not apply with respect to any action in which the director would be liable under Section 174 of the DGCL nor does it apply with respect to any liability in which the director (i) breached his duty of loyalty to us or our stockholders; (ii) did not act in good faith or, in failing to act, did not act in good faith; (iii) acted in a manner involving intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law or, in failing to act, shall have acted in a manner involving intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law; or (iv) derived an improper personal benefit. This provision could have the effect of reducing the likelihood of derivative litigation against our directors and may discourage or deter our stockholders or management from bringing a lawsuit against our directors for breach of their duty of care, even though such an action, if successful, might otherwise have benefited us and our stockholders.

Our certificate of incorporation and bylaws provide that all directors and officers shall be entitled to be indemnified by such company to the fullest extent permitted by law. The certificate of incorporation provides that we may indemnify to the fullest extent permitted by law all employees. Our bylaws provide that, if authorized by our board of directors, we may indemnify any other person whom it has the power to indemnify under section 145 of the DGCL. We have entered, and intend to continue to enter, into separate indemnification agreements with our directors and executive officers, in addition to the indemnification provided for in our certificate of incorporation and bylaws. We also maintain directors' and officers' liability insurance.

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to directors, officers or person controlling us pursuant to the foregoing provisions, we have been informed that in the opinion of the SEC such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Act and is therefore unenforceable.

Anti-Takeover Provisions

Provisions of the DGCL and our certificate of incorporation and bylaws could make it more difficult to acquire us by means of a tender offer, a proxy contest or otherwise, or to remove incumbent officers and directors. These provisions, summarized below, are expected to discourage certain types of coercive takeover practices and takeover bids that our board of directors may consider inadequate and to encourage persons seeking to acquire control of us to first negotiate with our board of directors. We believe that the benefits of increased protection of our ability to negotiate with the proponent of an unfriendly or unsolicited proposal to acquire or restructure us outweigh the disadvantages of discouraging takeover or acquisition proposals because, among other things, negotiation of these proposals could result in improved terms for our stockholders.

Delaware Anti-Takeover Statute.

We are subject to Section 203 of the DGCL, an anti-takeover statute. In general, Section 203 of the DGCL prohibits a publicly-held Delaware corporation from engaging in a "business combination" with an "interested stockholder" for a period of three years following the time the person became an interested stockholder, unless the business combination or the acquisition of shares that resulted in a stockholder becoming an interested stockholder is approved in a prescribed manner. Generally, a "business combination" includes a merger, asset or stock sale, or other transaction resulting in a financial benefit to the interested stockholder. Generally, an "interested stockholder" is a person who, together with affiliates and associates, owns (or within three years prior to the determination of interested stockholder status did own) 15% or more of a corporation's voting stock. The existence of this provision would be expected to have an anti-takeover effect with respect to transactions not approved in advance by the board of directors, including discouraging attempts that might result in a premium over the market price for the shares of common stock held by stockholders.

Amendments to Our Certificate of Incorporation.

Under the DGCL, the affirmative vote of a majority of the outstanding shares entitled to vote thereon and a majority of the outstanding stock of each class entitled to vote thereon is required to amend a corporation's certificate of incorporation. Under the DGCL, the holders of the outstanding shares of a class of our capital stock shall be entitled to vote as a class upon a proposed amendment, whether or not entitled to vote thereon by the certificate of incorporation, if the amendment would:

- increase or decrease the aggregate number of authorized shares of such class;
- increase or decrease the par value of the shares of such class; or
- alter or change the powers, preferences or special rights of the shares of such class so as to affect them adversely.

If any proposed amendment would alter or change the powers, preferences or special rights of one or more series of any class of our capital stock so as to affect them adversely, but shall not so affect the entire class, then only the shares of the series so affected by the amendment shall be considered a separate class for the purposes of this provision.

Vacancies in the Board of Directors.

Our certificate of incorporation and bylaws provide that, subject to limitations, any vacancy occurring in our board of directors for any reason may be filled by a majority of the remaining members of our board of directors then in office, even if such majority is less than a quorum. Each director elected to fill a vacancy resulting from the death, resignation or removal of a director shall hold office until the expiration of the term of the director whose death, resignation or removal created the vacancy.

Special Meetings of Stockholders.

Under our bylaws, special meetings of stockholders may be called by the directors, or the president or the chairman, and shall be called by the secretary at the request in writing of stockholders owning a majority in amount of the entire capital stock of the corporation issued and outstanding and entitled to vote.

No Cumulative Voting.

The DGCL provides that stockholders are denied the right to cumulate votes in the election of directors unless our certificate of incorporation provides otherwise. Our certificate of incorporation does not provide for cumulative voting.

Listing

Our Class A common stock is listed for trading on the Nasdaq Global Market under the symbol "CSSE" and our Series A Preferred Stock is listed for trading on the Nasdaq Global Market under the symbol "CSSEP." On September 27, 2018, the last reported sale prices of our Class A common stock and Series A Preferred Stock were \$10.74 and \$26.40, respectively. As of the date of this prospectus, none of the other securities that we may offer by this prospectus are listed on any national securities exchange or automated quotation system.

Transfer Agent and Registrar and Warrant Agent

The transfer agent and registrar for our Class A common stock and Series A preferred stock is Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company. The transfer agent and registrar for any other series of preferred stock will be set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement. The warrant agent for any class of warrants, if any, will be set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement.

DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS

We may issue warrants for the purchase of common stock, preferred stock, debt securities or any other security offered hereby. Warrants may be issued independently or together with other securities and may be attached to or separate from any offered securities. We may issue the warrants directly or under warrant agreements to be entered into between a warrant agent and us. Any warrant agent will act solely as our agent in connection with the warrants and will not have any obligation or relationship of agency or trust for or with any holders or beneficial owners of warrants.

The following outlines some of the general terms and provisions of the warrants that we may issue. A prospectus supplement will describe the particular terms of any warrants offered from time to time, and may supplement or change the terms outlined below. We will file as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, or will incorporate by reference from reports that we file with the SEC, a form of the warrant or form of the warrant agreement and warrant certificate that sets forth the terms of the particular warrants we are offering. The summary of such terms contained in this prospectus and in the applicable prospectus supplement is qualified in its entirety by reference to such warrant or warrant agreement and warrant certificate. We urge you to read the warrant or warrant agreement and warrant certificate and the additional description of the terms of the warrants included in the prospectus supplement.

General

The prospectus supplement relating to a particular issue of warrants will describe the terms of the warrants, including the following:

- the title of the warrants;
- the offering price for the warrants, if any;
- the aggregate number of the warrants;
- the designation and terms of the common stock, preferred stock or other class of security that may be purchased upon exercise of the warrants;
- if applicable, the designation and terms of the securities that the warrants are issued with and the number of warrants issued with each security;
- if applicable, the date from and after which the warrants and any securities issued with the warrants will be separately transferable;
- the number of shares and price of common stock or preferred stock, or the designation and number or amount of other debt securities, that may be purchased upon exercise of a warrant;
- the dates on which the right to exercise the warrants commence and expire;
- if applicable, the minimum or maximum amount of the warrants that may be exercised at any one time;
- if applicable, a discussion of material U.S. federal income tax considerations;
- anti-dilution provisions of the warrants, if any;
- redemption or call provisions, if any, applicable to the warrants; and
- any additional terms of the warrants, including terms, procedures and limitations relating to the exchange and exercise of the warrants.

Exercise of Warrants

Each warrant will entitle the holder of the warrant to purchase at the exercise price set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement the principal amount of debt securities or shares of common stock or preferred stock being offered. Holders may exercise warrants at any time up to the close of business on the expiration date set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement. After the close of business on the expiration date, unexercised warrants will be void. Holders may exercise warrants as set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to the warrants being offered.

Until a holder exercises the warrants to purchase any securities underlying the warrants, the holder will not have any rights as a holder of the underlying securities by virtue of ownership of warrants.

DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES

We may offer any combination of senior debt securities or subordinated debt securities. We may issue the senior debt securities and the subordinated debt securities under separate indentures between us, as issuer, and the trustee or trustees identified in a prospectus supplement. Further information regarding the trustee may be provided in the prospectus supplement. The form for each type of indenture is filed as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part.

The following outlines some of the general terms and provisions of the debt securities that we may issue. A prospectus supplement will describe the particular terms of any debt securities offered from time to time, and may supplement or change the terms outlined below. We will file as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, or will incorporate by reference from reports that we file with the SEC, a form of the indenture supplement that sets forth the terms of the particular debt securities we are offering. The summary of such debt securities contained in this prospectus and in the applicable prospectus supplement is qualified in its entirety by reference to the indentures and the applicable indenture supplement. We urge you to read the indentures, the applicable indenture supplement and the additional description of the debt securities in the prospectus supplement.

General

Within the total dollar amount of this shelf registration statement, we may issue an unlimited principal amount of debt securities in separate series. We may specify a maximum aggregate principal amount for the debt securities of any series. The debt securities will have terms that are consistent with the indentures. Senior debt securities will be unsubordinated obligations and will rank equal with all our other unsubordinated debt. Subordinated debt securities will be paid only if all payments due under our senior indebtedness, including any outstanding senior debt securities, have been made.

The indentures might not limit the amount of other debt that we may incur or whether that debt is senior to the debt securities offered by this prospectus, and might not contain financial or similar restrictive covenants. The indentures might not contain any provision to protect holders of debt securities against a sudden or dramatic decline in our ability to pay our debt.

The prospectus supplement will describe the debt securities and the price or prices at which we will offer the debt securities. The description will include:

- the title and form of the debt securities;
- any limit on the aggregate principal amount of the debt securities or the series of which they are a part;
- the date or dates on which we must repay the principal, the maturity date and the principal amount due at maturity and whether the securities will be offered at a price such that they will be deemed an “original issue discount”;
- the person to whom any interest on a debt security of the series will be paid;

- the rate or rates at which the debt securities will bear interest;
- if any, the date or dates from which interest will accrue, and the dates on which we must pay interest;
- the place or places where we must pay the principal and any premium or interest on the debt securities;
- the terms and conditions on which we may redeem any debt security, if at all;
- any obligation to redeem or purchase any debt securities, and the terms and conditions on which we must do so;
- the denominations in which we may issue the debt securities;
- the currency in which we will pay the principal of and any premium or interest on the debt securities and whether we may pay in property other than cash, including our securities;
- the principal amount of the debt securities that we will pay upon declaration of acceleration of their maturity;
- whether and under what circumstances, if any, we will pay additional amounts on any debt securities held by a person who is not a United States person for tax purposes, and whether we can redeem the debt securities if we have to pay such additional amounts;
- if applicable, that the debt securities are defeasible and the terms of such defeasance;
- if applicable, the terms of any right to convert debt securities into, or exchange debt securities for, debt securities, preferred stock and common stock or other securities or property;
- whether we will issue the debt securities in the form of one or more global securities and, if so, the respective depositaries for the global securities and the terms of the global securities;
- the subordination provisions that will apply to any subordinated debt securities;
- any addition to or change in the events of default applicable to the debt securities and any change in the right of the trustee or the holders to declare the principal amount of any of the debt securities due and payable;
- any addition to or change in the covenants in the indentures; and
- any other terms of the debt securities not inconsistent with the applicable indentures.

We may sell the debt securities at a substantial discount below their stated principal amount. We will describe U.S. federal income tax considerations, if any, applicable to debt securities sold at an original issue discount in the prospectus supplement. An “original issue discount security” is any debt security sold for less than its face value, and which provides that the holder cannot receive the full face value if maturity is accelerated. The prospectus supplement relating to any original issue discount securities will describe the particular provisions relating to acceleration of the maturity upon the occurrence of an event of default. In addition, we will describe U.S. federal income tax or other considerations applicable to any debt securities that are denominated in a currency or unit other than U.S. dollars in the prospectus supplement.

Conversion and Exchange Rights

The prospectus supplement will describe, if applicable, the terms on which you may convert debt securities into or exchange them for debt securities, preferred stock and common stock or other securities or property. The conversion or exchange may be mandatory or may be at our option or at your option. The prospectus supplement will describe how the amount of debt securities, number of shares of preferred stock and common stock or other securities or property to be received upon conversion or exchange would be calculated.

Subordination of Subordinated Debt Securities

The indebtedness underlying any subordinated debt securities will be payable only if all payments due under our senior indebtedness, as defined in the applicable indenture and any indenture supplement, including any outstanding senior debt securities, have been made. If we distribute our assets to creditors upon any dissolution, winding-up, liquidation or reorganization or in bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership or similar proceedings, we must first pay all amounts due or to become due on all senior indebtedness before we pay the principal of, or any premium or interest on, the subordinated debt securities. In the event the subordinated debt securities are accelerated because of an event of default, we may not make any payment on the subordinated debt securities until we have paid all senior indebtedness or the acceleration is rescinded. If the payment of subordinated debt securities accelerates because of an event of default, we must promptly notify holders of senior indebtedness of the acceleration.

If we experience a bankruptcy, dissolution or reorganization, holders of senior indebtedness may receive more, ratably, and holders of subordinated debt securities may receive less, ratably, than our other creditors. The indenture for subordinated debt securities may not limit our ability to incur additional senior indebtedness.

Form, Exchange and Transfer

We will issue debt securities only in fully registered form, without coupons, and only in denominations of \$1,000 and integral multiples thereof, unless the prospectus supplement provides otherwise. The holder of a debt security may elect, subject to the terms of the indentures and the limitations applicable to global securities, to exchange them for other debt securities of the same series of any authorized denomination and of similar terms and aggregate principal amount.

Holders of debt securities may present them for exchange as provided above or for registration of transfer, duly endorsed or with the form of transfer duly executed, at the office of the transfer agent we designate for that purpose. We will not impose a service charge for any registration of transfer or exchange of debt securities, but we may require a payment sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge payable in connection with the transfer or exchange. We will name the transfer agent in the prospectus supplement. We may designate additional transfer agents or rescind the designation of any transfer agent or approve a change in the office through which any transfer agent acts, but we must maintain a transfer agent in each place where we will make payment on debt securities.

If we redeem the debt securities, we will not be required to issue, register the transfer of or exchange any debt security during a specified period prior to mailing a notice of redemption. We are not required to register the transfer of or exchange of any debt security selected for redemption, except the unredeemed portion of the debt security being redeemed.

Global Securities

The debt securities may be represented, in whole or in part, by one or more global securities that will have an aggregate principal amount equal to that of all debt securities of that series. Each global security will be registered in the name of a depository identified in the prospectus supplement. We will deposit the global security with the depository or a custodian, and the global security will bear a legend regarding the restrictions on exchanges and registration of transfer.

No global security may be exchanged in whole or in part for debt securities registered, and no transfer of a global security in whole or in part may be registered, in the name of any person other than the depository or any nominee or successor of the depository unless:

- the depository is unwilling or unable to continue as depository; or

- the depositary is no longer in good standing under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or “Exchange Act,” or other applicable statute or regulation.

The depositary will determine how all securities issued in exchange for a global security will be registered.

As long as the depositary or its nominee is the registered holder of a global security, we will consider the depositary or the nominee to be the sole owner and holder of the global security and the underlying debt securities. Except as stated above, owners of beneficial interests in a global security will not be entitled to have the global security or any debt security registered in their names, will not receive physical delivery of certificated debt securities and will not be considered to be the owners or holders of the global security or underlying debt securities. We will make all payments of principal, premium and interest on a global security to the depositary or its nominee. The laws of some jurisdictions require that some purchasers of securities take physical delivery of such securities in definitive form. These laws may prevent you from transferring your beneficial interests in a global security.

Only institutions that have accounts with the depositary or its nominee and persons that hold beneficial interests through the depositary or its nominee may own beneficial interests in a global security. The depositary will credit, on its book-entry registration and transfer system, the respective principal amounts of debt securities represented by the global security to the accounts of its participants. Ownership of beneficial interests in a global security will be shown only on, and the transfer of those ownership interests will be effected only through, records maintained by the depositary or any such participant.

The policies and procedures of the depositary may govern payments, transfers, exchanges and other matters relating to beneficial interests in a global security. We and the trustee will assume no responsibility or liability for any aspect of the depositary’s or any participant’s records relating to, or for payments made on account of, beneficial interests in a global security.

Payment and Paying Agents

We will pay principal and any premium or interest on a debt security to the person in whose name the debt security is registered at the close of business on the regular record date for such interest.

We will pay principal and any premium or interest on the debt securities at the office of our designated paying agent. Unless the prospectus supplement indicates otherwise, the corporate trust office of the trustee will be the paying agent for the debt securities.

Any other paying agents we designate for the debt securities of a particular series will be named in the prospectus supplement. We may designate additional paying agents, rescind the designation of any paying agent or approve a change in the office through which any paying agent acts, but we must maintain a paying agent in each place of payment for the debt securities.

The paying agent will return to us all money we pay to it for the payment of the principal, premium or interest on any debt security that remains unclaimed for a specified period. Thereafter, the holder may look only to us for payment, as an unsecured general creditor.

Consolidation, Merger and Sale of Assets

Under the terms of the indentures, so long as any securities remain outstanding, we may not consolidate or enter into a share exchange with or merge into any other person, in a transaction in which we are not the surviving corporation, or sell, convey, transfer or lease our properties and assets substantially as an entirety to any person, unless:

- the successor assumes our obligations under the debt securities and the indentures; and
- we meet the other conditions described in the indentures.

Events of Default

Each of the following will constitute an event of default under each indenture:

- failure to pay any interest on any debt security when due, for more than a specified number of days past the due date;
- failure to pay any principal or deposit any sinking fund payment when due;
- failure to perform any covenant or agreement in the indenture that continues for a specified number of days after written notice has been given by the trustee or the holders of a specified percentage in aggregate principal amount of the debt securities of that series;
- events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization; and
- any other event of default specified in the prospectus supplement.

If an event of default occurs and continues, both the trustee and holders of a specified percentage in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding securities of that series may declare the principal amount of the debt securities of that series to be immediately due and payable. The holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding securities of that series may rescind and annul the acceleration if all events of default, other than the nonpayment of accelerated principal, have been cured or waived.

Except for its duties in case of an event of default, the trustee will not be obligated to exercise any of its rights or powers at the request or direction of any of the holders, unless the holders have offered the trustee reasonable indemnity. If they provide this indemnification and subject to conditions specified in the applicable indenture, the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding securities of any series may direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the trustee or exercising any trust or power conferred on the trustee with respect to the debt securities of that series.

No holder of a debt security of any series may institute any proceeding with respect to the indentures, or for the appointment of a receiver or a trustee, or for any other remedy, unless:

- the holder has previously given the trustee written notice of a continuing event of default;
- the holders of a specified percentage in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding securities of that series have made a written request upon the trustee, and have offered reasonable indemnity to the trustee, to institute the proceeding;
- the trustee has failed to institute the proceeding for a specified period of time after its receipt of the notification; and
- the trustee has not received a direction inconsistent with the request within a specified number of days from the holders of a specified percentage in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding securities of that series.

Modification and Waiver

We and the trustee may change an indenture without the consent of any holders with respect to specific matters, including:

- to fix any ambiguity, defect or inconsistency in the indenture; and
- to change anything that does not materially adversely affect the interests of any holder of debt securities of any series.

In addition, under the indentures, the rights of holders of a series of notes may be changed by us and the trustee with the written consent of the holders of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of each series that is affected. However, we and the trustee may only make the following changes with the consent of the holder of any outstanding debt securities affected:

- extending the fixed maturity of the series of notes;
- reducing the principal amount, reducing the rate of or extending the time of payment of interest, or any premium payable upon the redemption, of any debt securities; or
- reducing the percentage of debt securities the holders of which are required to consent to any amendment.

The holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of any series may waive any past default under the indenture with respect to debt securities of that series, except a default in the payment of principal, premium or interest on any debt security of that series or in respect of a covenant or provision of the indenture that cannot be amended without each holder's consent.

Except in limited circumstances, we may set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the holders of outstanding debt securities of any series entitled to give or take any direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action under the indentures. In limited circumstances, the trustee may set a record date. To be effective, the action must be taken by holders of the requisite principal amount of such debt securities within a specified period following the record date.

Defeasance

To the extent stated in the prospectus supplement, we may elect to apply the provisions in the indentures relating to defeasance and discharge of indebtedness, or to defeasance of restrictive covenants, to the debt securities of any series. The indentures provide that, upon satisfaction of the requirements described below, we may terminate all of our obligations under the debt securities of any series and the applicable indenture, known as legal defeasance, other than our obligation:

- to maintain a registrar and paying agents and hold monies for payment in trust;
- to register the transfer or exchange of the notes; and
- to replace mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen notes.

In addition, we may terminate our obligation to comply with any restrictive covenants under the debt securities of any series or the applicable indenture, known as covenant defeasance.

We may exercise our legal defeasance option even if we have previously exercised our covenant defeasance option. If we exercise either defeasance option, payment of the notes may not be accelerated because of the occurrence of events of default.

To exercise either defeasance option as to debt securities of any series, we must irrevocably deposit in trust with the trustee money and/or obligations backed by the full faith and credit of the United States that will provide money in an amount sufficient in the written opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants to pay the principal of, premium, if any, and each installment of interest on the debt securities. We may only establish this trust if, among other things:

- no event of default shall have occurred or be continuing;
- in the case of legal defeasance, we have delivered to the trustee an opinion of counsel to the effect that we have received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling or there has been a change in law, which in the opinion of our counsel, provides that holders of the debt securities will not recognize gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such deposit, defeasance and discharge and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit, defeasance and discharge had not occurred;

- in the case of covenant defeasance, we have delivered to the trustee an opinion of counsel to the effect that the holders of the debt securities will not recognize gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such deposit, defeasance and discharge and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit, defeasance and discharge had not occurred; and
- we satisfy other customary conditions precedent described in the applicable indenture.

Notices

We will mail notices to holders of debt securities as indicated in the prospectus supplement.

Title

We may treat the person in whose name a debt security is registered as the absolute owner, whether or not such debt security may be overdue, for the purpose of making payment and for all other purposes.

Governing Law

The indentures and the debt securities will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York.

DESCRIPTION OF THE UNITS

We may issue units comprised of one or more of the other classes of securities offered hereby in any combination. Each unit will be issued so that the holder of the unit is also the holder of each security included in the unit. Thus, the holder of a unit will have the rights and obligations of a holder of each included security.

The units may be, but are not required to be, issued under unit agreements to be entered into between us and a unit agent, as detailed in the prospectus supplement relating to the units being offered. We will file as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, or will incorporate by reference from reports that we file with the SEC, a form of the unit agreement and unit certificate, if any, that sets forth the terms of the particular units we are offering. The summary of such terms contained in this prospectus and in the applicable prospectus supplement is qualified in its entirety by reference to such unit agreement and unit certificate. We urge you to read the unit agreement and unit certificate, if any, and the additional description of the terms of the units included in the prospectus supplement.

The prospectus supplement will describe the units and the price or prices at which we will offer the units. The description will include:

- the designation and terms of the units and of the securities comprising the units, including whether and under what circumstances the securities comprising the units may be held or transferred separately;
- a description of the terms of any unit agreement governing the units;
- a description of the provisions for the payment, settlement, transfer or exchange of the units;
- a discussion of material federal income tax considerations, if applicable; and
- whether the units if issued as a separate security will be issued in fully registered or global form.

The descriptions of the units in this prospectus and in any prospectus supplement are summaries of the material provisions of the applicable agreements.

PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION OF SECURITIES

We may sell or issue the securities offered by this prospectus from time to time in any one or more of the following ways:

- through underwriters or dealers;
- through agents;
- directly to purchasers or a single purchaser; or
- through a combination of any of these methods.

The manner in which we may sell some or all of the securities covered by this prospectus includes, without limitation, through:

- a rights offering;
- exercises of warrants or other rights;
- an “at the market” offering, within the meaning of Rule 415(a)(4) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the “Securities Act,” to or through a market maker or into an existing trading market on an exchange or otherwise;
- a block trade in which a broker-dealer will attempt to sell as agent, but may position or resell a portion of the block, as principal, in order to facilitate the transaction;
- purchases by a broker-dealer, as principal, and resale by the broker-dealer for its account;
- ordinary brokerage transactions and transactions in which a broker solicits purchasers; and
- privately negotiated transactions.

The distribution of the securities may be effected from time to time in one or more transactions:

- at a fixed price, or prices, which may be changed from time to time;
- at market prices prevailing at the time of sale;
- at varying prices determined at the time of sale; or
- at negotiated prices.

For each offering of securities hereunder, we will describe the method of distribution of such securities, among other things, in a prospectus supplement. A prospectus supplement will set forth the terms of the offering of the securities, including:

- the name or names of any agents or underwriters;
- the purchase price of the securities being offered and the proceeds we will receive from the sale;
- any over-allotment options under which underwriters may purchase additional securities from us;
- any agency fees or underwriting discounts and other items constituting agents’ or underwriters’ compensation;
- any initial public offering price;
- any discounts or concessions allowed or reallocated or paid to dealers; and
- any securities exchanges or markets on which such securities may be listed.

Sales Through Underwriters or Dealers

If underwriters are used in the sale of the securities, the securities will be acquired by the underwriters for their own account and may be resold from time to time in one or more transactions. The securities may be either offered to the public through underwriting syndicates represented by managing underwriters or by underwriters without a syndicate. The applicable prospectus supplement will indicate whether a sale is made on a firm commitment or best efforts basis or otherwise. Unless otherwise set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement, the obligations of the underwriters to purchase the securities will be subject to certain conditions precedent and the underwriters will be obligated to purchase all of the securities if any are purchased. Any initial public offering price and any discounts or concessions allowed or paid to dealers may be changed from time to time.

If a dealer is used in the sale of the securities, we will sell such securities to the dealer, as principal. The dealer may then resell such securities to the public at varying prices to be determined by such dealer at the time of resale. We may negotiate and pay dealers' commissions, discounts or concessions for their services. Any such dealer may be deemed to be an underwriter, as such term is defined in the Securities Act, of our securities so offered and sold.

Direct Sales and Sales Through Agents

We may sell the securities directly, in which case no underwriters or agents would be involved, or we may sell the securities through agents designated by us from time to time. If agents are used in the sale of the securities, the agent will not purchase any securities for its own account, but will arrange for the sale of the securities. Unless otherwise indicated in the prospectus supplement, any agent will be acting on a best efforts basis for the period of its appointment. We may negotiate and pay agent's fees or commissions for their services. If the securities are sold directly by us, we may sell the securities to institutional investors or others who may be deemed to be underwriters within the meaning of the Securities Act, with respect to any sale of those securities.

Delayed Delivery Contracts

We may authorize underwriters, dealers or agents to solicit offers by institutional investors, such as commercial banks and investment companies, to purchase the securities from us at the public offering price set forth in the prospectus supplement pursuant to delayed delivery contracts providing for payment and delivery on a specified date in the future. The conditions to these contracts and the commissions payable for solicitation of the contracts will be set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement.

At-the-Market Offerings

Underwriters, dealers or agents could make sales in an "at-the-market" offering, directly on the Nasdaq Global Market, the existing trading market for our common stock, or such other exchange or automated quotation system on which our securities trade, or to or through a market maker other than on an exchange.

Rights Offerings

We may issue the securities as a dividend or distribution or in a subscription rights offering to our existing security holders. If we offer securities in a subscription rights offering to our existing security holders, we may enter into a standby underwriting agreement with dealers, acting as standby underwriters. We may pay the standby underwriters a commitment fee for the securities they commit to purchase on a standby basis. If we do not enter into a standby underwriting arrangement, we may retain a dealer-manager to manage a subscription rights offering for us.

Compensation

In compliance with the guidelines of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc., or FINRA, all discounts, commissions or agency fees or other items constituting underwriting compensation to be received by any FINRA member or independent broker-dealer will be disclosed in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Indemnification

Any underwriters and agents may be entitled to indemnification by us against certain civil liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, or to contribution with respect to payments which the agents or underwriters may be required to make in respect of their liabilities.

Stabilization Activities

During and after an offering through underwriters, the underwriters may purchase and sell the securities in the open market. These transactions may include over allotment and stabilizing transactions and purchases to cover syndicate short positions created in connection with the offering. The underwriters may also impose a penalty bid, whereby selling concessions allowed to syndicate members or other broker-dealers for the offered securities sold for their account may be reclaimed by the syndicate if such offered securities are repurchased by the syndicate in stabilizing or covering transactions. These activities may stabilize, maintain or otherwise affect the market price of the offered securities, which may be higher than the price that might otherwise prevail in the open market. If commenced, these activities may be discontinued at any time.

Passive Market Making

Any underwriters who are qualified market makers may engage in passive market making transactions in the securities in accordance with Rule 103 of Regulation M.

Trading Markets

Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, securities offered under this prospectus will be a new issue and, other than the common stock and Series A Preferred Stock, which are listed on the Nasdaq Global Market under the symbols "CSSE" and "CSSEP", respectively, will have no established trading market. We may elect to list any other class or series of securities on an exchange, and in the case of the common stock, on any additional exchange, but, unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, we shall not be obligated to do so. Any underwriters to whom securities are sold for public offering and sale may make a market in the securities, but the underwriters will not be obligated to do so and may discontinue any market making at any time without notice. The securities may or may not be listed on a national securities exchange or a foreign securities exchange. No assurance can be given as to the liquidity of the trading market for any of the securities.

Other Matters

Any underwriters, dealers and agents, and their associates and affiliates may be customers of, have borrowing relationships with, engage in other transactions with, or perform services, including investment banking services, for us or one or more of our respective affiliates in the ordinary course of business.

We will bear all costs, expenses and fees associated with the registration of the securities offered.

LEGAL MATTERS

The validity of the securities offered will be passed on for us by our counsel, Graubard Miller, New York, New York. Graubard Miller and certain of its partners and family members own shares of the Class A common stock and Class W warrants to purchase shares of Class A common stock of CSSE and certain Class B membership interests in Chicken Soup for the Soul Holdings, LLC, our ultimate parent company.

EXPERTS

The consolidated financial statements of Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment Inc. and subsidiaries as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, and for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, have been incorporated by reference herein to the Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017, in reliance upon the report of Rosenfield and Company, PLLC, independent registered public accounting firm, which are incorporated by reference herein, and upon the authority of said firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

We file annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other information with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Our SEC filings are available to the public over the Internet at the SEC's web site at <http://www.sec.gov>. You may also read and copy any document we file with the SEC at the SEC's public reference room at 450 Fifth Street, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20549. Please call the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330 for further information about the public reference room.

We have filed with the SEC a registration statement under the Securities Act relating to the offering of these securities. The registration statement, including the attached exhibits, contains additional relevant information about us and the securities. This prospectus does not contain all of the information set forth in the registration statement. You can obtain a copy of the registration statement, at prescribed rates, from the SEC at the address listed above.

The registration statement and our SEC filings, including the documents referred to below under "*Information Incorporated by Reference*," are also available on our website, www.CSSE.com. We have not incorporated by reference into this prospectus the information on our website, and you should not consider it to be a part of this prospectus.

INFORMATION INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

The SEC allows us to incorporate by reference the information we file with it, which means that we can disclose important information to you by referring you to those documents. The information incorporated by reference is an important part of this prospectus, and information that we file later with the SEC will automatically update and supersede this information. This prospectus incorporates by reference the documents listed below, all filings we make under Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act after the initial filing date of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part and prior to effectiveness of such registration statement, and all filings we make with the SEC under Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act after effectiveness of such registration statement and prior to the sale of all of the shares offered hereby:

- our annual report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017 filed with the SEC on March 30, 2018;
- our quarterly reports on Form 10-Q for the fiscal quarter ended March 31, 2018 filed with the SEC on May 10, 2018 and for the fiscal quarter ended June 30, 2018 filed with the SEC on August 14, 2018;

- our current reports on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on each of July 18, 2018, July 31, 2018, August 12, 2018, August 17, 2018, August 28, 2018;
- our proxy statement on Schedule 14A filed with the SEC on April 27, 2018;
- our registration statement on Form 8-A effective on August 17, 2017, registering our Class A common stock under Section 12(b) of the Exchange Act; and
- our registration statement on Form 8-A effective on June 26, 2018, registering our Series A Preferred Stock under Section 12(b) of the Exchange Act.

Any statement contained in a document filed before the date of this prospectus and incorporated by reference herein shall be deemed to be modified or superseded for purposes of this prospectus to the extent that a statement contained herein modifies or supersedes such statement. Any statement so modified or superseded shall not be deemed, except as so modified or superseded, to constitute a part of this prospectus. Any information that we file after the date of this prospectus with the SEC and incorporated by reference herein will automatically update and supersede the information contained in this prospectus and in any document previously incorporated by reference in this prospectus. Notwithstanding the foregoing, we are not incorporating any document or portion thereof or information deemed to have been furnished and not filed in accordance with SEC rule.

We will provide you with a copy of any or all of the information that has been incorporated by reference in this prospectus, without charge, upon written or oral request directed to Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc. 132 E. Putnam Ave., Floor 2W, Cos Cob, Connecticut 06807, telephone number (203) 861-4000. You may also access the documents incorporated by reference as described under “*Where You Can Find More Information.*”

Chicken Soup
for the **Soul.**
Entertainment

COMMON STOCK
PREFERRED STOCK
WARRANTS
DEBT SECURITIES
UNITS

PROSPECTUS

September 28, 2018

PART II
INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS

Item 14. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution.

The estimated expenses in connection with the sale of the securities being registered hereby, are as follows:

SEC registration fee	\$ 1,618.50
FINRA filing fee	(1)
Listing fees and expenses	(1)
Accounting fees and expenses	(1)
Legal fees and expenses	(1)
Printing expenses	(1)
Transfer agent fees and expenses	(1)
Miscellaneous	(1)
Total	(1)

(1) These fees are calculated based on the securities offered and the number of issuances and accordingly cannot be estimated at this time.

All expenses, other than the SEC registration fee, are estimated. The actual expenses incurred will depend on the securities offered, the number of issuances and the nature of the offerings.

Item 15. Indemnification of Directors and Officers.

CSSE's certificate of incorporation and by-laws provide that all directors and officers shall be entitled to be indemnified by such company to the fullest extent permitted by law. The certificate of incorporation provides that CSSE may indemnify to the fullest extent permitted by law all employees. CSSE's by-laws provide that, if authorized by the Board of Directors, it may indemnify any other person whom it has the power to indemnify under section 145 of the Delaware General Company Law. Section 145 of the Delaware General Company Law concerning indemnification of officers, directors, employees and agents is set forth below.

“Section 145. Indemnification of officers, directors, employees and agents; insurance.

(a) A corporation shall have power to indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action, suit or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative (other than an action by or in the right of the corporation) by reason of the fact that the person is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise, against expenses (including attorneys' fees), judgments, fines and amounts paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred by the person in connection with such action, suit or proceeding if the person acted in good faith and in a manner the person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe the person's conduct was unlawful. The termination of any action, suit or proceeding by judgment, order, settlement, conviction, or upon a plea of nolo contendere or its equivalent, shall not, of itself, create a presumption that the person did not act in good faith and in a manner which the person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had reasonable cause to believe that the person's conduct was unlawful.

(b) A corporation shall have power to indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action or suit by or in the right of the corporation to procure a judgment in its favor by reason of the fact that the person is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise against expenses (including attorneys' fees) actually and reasonably incurred by the person in connection with the defense or settlement of such action or suit if the person acted in good faith and in a manner the person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation and except that no indemnification shall be made in respect of any claim, issue or matter as to which such person shall have been adjudged to be liable to the corporation unless and only to the extent that the Court of Chancery or the court in which such action or suit was brought shall determine upon application that, despite the adjudication of liability but in view of all the circumstances of the case, such person is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnity for such expenses which the Court of Chancery or such other court shall deem proper.

(c) To the extent that a present or former director or officer of a corporation has been successful on the merits or otherwise in defense of any action, suit or proceeding referred to in subsections (a) and (b) of this section, or in defense of any claim, issue or matter therein, such person shall be indemnified against expenses (including attorneys' fees) actually and reasonably incurred by such person in connection therewith.

(d) Any indemnification under subsections (a) and (b) of this section (unless ordered by a court) shall be made by the corporation only as authorized in the specific case upon a determination that indemnification of the present or former director, officer, employee or agent is proper in the circumstances because the person has met the applicable standard of conduct set forth in subsections (a) and (b) of this section. Such determination shall be made, with respect to a person who is a director or officer of the corporation at the time of such determination, (1) by a majority vote of the directors who are not parties to such action, suit or proceeding, even though less than a quorum, or (2) by a committee of such directors designated by majority vote of such directors, even though less than a quorum, or (3) if there are no such directors, or if such directors so direct, by independent legal counsel in a written opinion, or (4) by the stockholders.

(e) Expenses (including attorneys' fees) incurred by an officer or director of the corporation in defending any civil, criminal, administrative or investigative action, suit or proceeding may be paid by the corporation in advance of the final disposition of such action, suit or proceeding upon receipt of an undertaking by or on behalf of such director or officer to repay such amount if it shall ultimately be determined that such person is not entitled to be indemnified by the corporation as authorized in this section. Such expenses (including attorneys' fees) incurred by former directors and officers or other employees and agents of the corporation or by persons serving at the request of the corporation as directors, officers, employees or agents of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise may be so paid upon such terms and conditions, if any, as the corporation deems appropriate.

(f) The indemnification and advancement of expenses provided by, or granted pursuant to, the other subsections of this section shall not be deemed exclusive of any other rights to which those seeking indemnification or advancement of expenses may be entitled under any bylaw, agreement, vote of stockholders or disinterested directors or otherwise, both as to action in such person's official capacity and as to action in another capacity while holding such office. A right to indemnification or to advancement of expenses arising under a provision of the certificate of incorporation or a bylaw shall not be eliminated or impaired by an amendment to such provision after the occurrence of the act or omission that is the subject of the civil, criminal, administrative or investigative action, suit or proceeding for which indemnification or advancement of expenses is sought, unless the provision in effect at the time of such act or omission explicitly authorizes such elimination or impairment after such action or omission has occurred.

(g) A corporation shall have power to purchase and maintain insurance on behalf of any person who is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise against any liability asserted against such person and incurred by such person in any such capacity, or arising out of such person's status as such, whether or not the corporation would have the power to indemnify such person against such liability under this section.

(h) For purposes of this section, references to “the corporation” shall include, in addition to the resulting corporation, any constituent corporation (including any constituent of a constituent) absorbed in a consolidation or merger which, if its separate existence had continued, would have had power and authority to indemnify its directors, officers, and employees or agents, so that any person who is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of such constituent corporation, or is or was serving at the request of such constituent corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise, shall stand in the same position under this section with respect to the resulting or surviving corporation as such person would have with respect to such constituent corporation if its separate existence had continued.

(i) For purposes of this section, references to “other enterprises” shall include employee benefit plans; references to “fines” shall include any excise taxes assessed on a person with respect to any employee benefit plan; and references to “serving at the request of the corporation” shall include any service as a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation which imposes duties on, or involves services by, such director, officer, employee or agent with respect to an employee benefit plan, its participants or beneficiaries; and a person who acted in good faith and in a manner such person reasonably believed to be in the interest of the participants and beneficiaries of an employee benefit plan shall be deemed to have acted in a manner “not opposed to the best interests of the corporation” as referred to in this section.

(j) The indemnification and advancement of expenses provided by, or granted pursuant to, this section shall, unless otherwise provided when authorized or ratified, continue as to a person who has ceased to be a director, officer, employee or agent and shall inure to the benefit of the heirs, executors and administrators of such a person.

(k) The Court of Chancery is hereby vested with exclusive jurisdiction to hear and determine all actions for advancement of expenses or indemnification brought under this section or under any bylaw, agreement, vote of stockholders or disinterested directors, or otherwise. The Court of Chancery may summarily determine a corporation’s obligation to advance expenses (including attorneys’ fees).”

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to our directors, officers, and controlling persons pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, we have been advised that, in the opinion of the SEC, such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person in a successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, we will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to the court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

Paragraph B of Article Eight of CSSE’s certificate of incorporation provides:

“The Company, to the full extent permitted by Section 145 of the GCL, as amended from time to time, shall indemnify all persons whom it may indemnify pursuant thereto. Expenses (including attorneys’ fees) incurred by an officer or director in defending any civil, criminal, administrative, or investigative action, suit or proceeding for which such officer or director may be entitled to indemnification hereunder shall be paid by the Company in advance of the final disposition of such action, suit or proceeding upon receipt of an undertaking by or on behalf of such director or officer to repay such amount if it shall ultimately be determined that he is not entitled to be indemnified by the Company as authorized hereby.”

Item 16. Exhibits

A list of the exhibits required by Item 601 of Regulation S-K to be filed as part of this registration statement is set forth in the Exhibit Index on page II-9.

Item 17. Undertakings

(a) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes:

(1) To file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:

(i) To include any prospectus required by Section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933;

(ii) To reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of the registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in the registration statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in the aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than a 20 percent change in the maximum aggregate offering price set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective registration statement;

(iii) To include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in the registration statement or any material change to such information in the registration statement;

Provided, however, that:

Paragraphs (1)(i), (1)(ii) and (1)(iii) of this section do not apply if the registration statement is on Form S-3 and the information required to be included in a post-effective amendment by those paragraphs is contained in reports filed with or furnished to the Commission by the registrant pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 that are incorporated by reference in the registration statement, or is contained in a form of prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) that is part of the registration statement.

(2) That, for the purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

(3) To remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering.

(5) That, for the purpose of determining liability under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser:

(i) (A) Each prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(3) shall be deemed to be part of the registration statement as of the date the filed prospectus was deemed part of and included in the registration statement; and

(B) Each prospectus required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424(b)(2), (b)(5), or (b)(7) as part of a registration statement in reliance on Rule 430B relating to an offering made pursuant to Rule 415(a)(1)(i), (vii), or (x) for the purpose of providing the information required by Section 10(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the earlier of the date such form of prospectus is first used after effectiveness or the date of the first contract of sale of securities in the offering described in the prospectus. As provided in Rule 430B, for liability purposes of the issuer and any person that is at that date an underwriter, such date shall be deemed to be a new effective date of the registration statement relating to the securities in the registration statement to which that prospectus relates, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof. Provided, however, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such effective date, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such effective date.

(6) That, for the purpose of determining liability of the registrant under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser in the initial distribution of the securities:

The undersigned registrant undertakes that in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:

- (i) Any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the undersigned registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;
- (ii) Any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant or used or referred to by the undersigned registrant;
- (iii) The portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about the undersigned registrant or its securities provided by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant; and
- (iv) Any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the undersigned registrant to the purchaser.

(b) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes that, for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each filing of the registrant's annual report pursuant to Section 13(a) or Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (and, where applicable, each filing of an employee benefit plan's annual report pursuant to Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934) that is incorporated by reference in the registration statement shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

(h) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933 may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the registrant pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

(j) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes to file an application for the purpose of determining the eligibility of the trustee to act under subsection (a) of Section 310 of the Trust Indenture Act in accordance with the rules and regulations prescribed by the SEC under Section 305(b)(2) of the Trust Indenture Act.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the registrant has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in Cos Cob, Connecticut, on the 28th day of September, 2018.

CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT, INC.

By: /s/ William J. Rouhana, Jr.

Name: William J. Rouhana, Jr.

Title: Chief Executive Officer

POWER OF ATTORNEY

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, that each person whose signature appears below constitutes and appoints William Rouhana, Jr. and Scott W. Seaton his true and lawful attorney-in-fact, with full power of substitution and resubstitution for him and in his name, place and stead, in any and all capacities to sign any and all amendments including pre- and post-effective amendments to this registration statement, any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and pre- or post-effective amendments thereto, and to file the same, with all exhibits thereto, and other documents in connection therewith, with the Securities and Exchange Commission, hereby ratifying and confirming all that said attorney-in-fact or his substitute, each acting alone, may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue thereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this Registration Statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>Name</u>	<u>Position</u>	<u>Date</u>
By: <u>/s/ William J. Rouhana, Jr.</u> William J. Rouhana, Jr.	Chairman and Chief Executive Officer (Principal Executive Officer)	September 28, 2018
By: <u>/s/ Scott W. Seaton</u> Scott W. Seaton	Vice Chairman and Director	September 28, 2018
By: <u>/s/ Daniel M. Pess</u> Daniel M. Pess	Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial and Accounting)	September 28, 2018
By: <u>*</u> Amy Newmark	Director	September 28, 2018
By: <u>*</u> Peter Dekom	Director	September 28, 2018

Name	Position	Date
By: * Fred Cohen	Director	September 28, 2018
By: * Christina Weiss Lurie	Director	September 28, 2018
By: * Diana Wilkin	Director	September 28, 2018

* By Scott W. Seaton, Power of Attorney

EXHIBIT INDEX

<u>Exhibit No.</u>	<u>Description</u>
1.1	Form of Underwriting Agreement*
3.1	Certificate of Incorporation(1)
3.2	Bylaws(1)
4.1	Certificate of Designations, Rights and Preferences of 9.75% Series A Cumulative Redeemable Perpetual Preferred Stock(2)
4.2	Certificate of Amendment to the Certificate of Designations, Rights and Preferences of 9.75% Series A Cumulative Redeemable Perpetual Preferred Stock.
4.3	Preferred Stock Certificate of Designations*
4.4	Warrant Agreement*
4.5	Form of Indenture for Senior Debt Securities between the Registrant and Trustee to be designated
4.6	Form of Indenture for Subordinated Debt Securities between the Registrant and Trustee to be designated
4.7	Unit Agreement*
5.1	Opinion of Graubard Miller
10.1	Form of Securities Purchase Agreement*
23.1	Consent of Rosenfield and Company, PLLC
23.2	Consent of Graubard Miller (included in its opinion filed as Exhibit 5.1)
24.1	Power of Attorney (set forth on signature page)
25.1	Statement of Eligibility of Trustee on Form T-1 with respect to the Senior Debt Indenture**
25.2	Statement of Eligibility of Trustee on Form T-1 with respect to the Subordinated Debt Indenture**

* To be filed, if applicable, subsequent to the effectiveness of this Registration Statement by an amendment to this Registration Statement or by incorporation by reference through a Current Report on Form 8-K filed in connection with an offering of securities.

** To be filed by amendment or pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 Section 305(b)(2), if applicable.

(1) Incorporated by reference to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form 1-A (SEC File No. 024-10704).

(2) Incorporated by reference to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed June 29, 2018.

**CERTIFICATE OF AMENDMENT
TO
CERTIFICATE OF DESIGNATIONS, RIGHTS AND PREFERENCES
OF
9.75% SERIES A CUMULATIVE REDEEMABLE PERPETUAL PREFERRED STOCK
OF
CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT INC.**

Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment Inc. (the “Company”), a corporation organized and existing and by virtue of the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware (“DGCL”) does hereby certify:

FIRST: The Company’s Certificate of Incorporation was filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware on May 4, 2016 (the “Charter”), and the Company’s Certificate of Designations, Rights and Preferences of 9.75% Series A Cumulative Redeemable Perpetual Preferred Stock was filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware on June 26, 2018 (the “Certificate of Designation”);

SECOND: The Board of Directors of the Company, acting by unanimous written consent pursuant to Section 141 of the DGCL, duly adopted resolutions approving an increase to the number of shares of authorized preferred stock that would be designated as 9.75% Series A Cumulative Redeemable Perpetual Preferred Stock, and approving the form of the amendment to the Certificate of Designation set forth below.

THIRD: Shareholder approval of the amendment set forth below is not required under the Charter or the DGCL.

FOURTH: The Certificate of designation is hereby amended by deleting Section 1 in its entirety and replacing it with the following:

1. Designation and Amount. The shares of such series of Preferred Stock shall be designated as “9.75% Series A Cumulative Redeemable Perpetual Preferred Stock” and the number of shares constituting such series shall be 824,000 shares.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this Certificate of Amendment to the Certificate of Designation to be executed by the undersigned this 22nd day of August, 2018.

Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment Inc.

By: /s/ William J. Rouhana, Jr.

William J. Rouhana, Jr.
Chairman of the Board
and Chief Executive Officer

CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT, INC.,
As Issuer,

AND

[_____],
As Trustee

INDENTURE

DATED AS OF [_____] [___], 20[___]

SENIOR DEBT SECURITIES

CROSS-REFERENCE TABLE (1)

Section of Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as Amended	Indenture
310(a)	7.10
310(b)	7.09; 7.11
310(c)	Inapplicable
311(a)	7.14
311(b)	7.14
311(c)	Inapplicable
312(a)	5.02(a)
312(b)	5.02(c)
312(c)	Inapplicable
313(a)	5.04(a)
313(b)	5.04(b)
313(c)	5.04(a); 5.04(b)
313(d)	5.04(c)
314(a)	5.03; 4.06
314(b)	Inapplicable
314(c)	13.07
314(d)	Inapplicable
314(e)	13.07
314(f)	Inapplicable
315(a)	7.01(a); 7.03
315(b)	7.02
315(c)	7.01
315(d)	7.01(b)
315(e)	6.07; 7.07
316(a)	6.06; 8.04
316(b)	6.04
316(c)	8.01
317(a)	6.02
317(b)	4.03
318(a)	13.09

(1) This Cross-Reference Table does not constitute part of the Indenture and shall not have any bearing on the interpretation of any of its terms or provisions

TABLE OF CONTENTS (2)

ARTICLE I	DEFINITIONS	1
SECTION 1.01	DEFINITIONS OF TERMS	1
ARTICLE II	ISSUE, DESCRIPTION, TERMS, EXECUTION, REGISTRATION AND EXCHANGE OF SECURITIES	4
SECTION 2.01	DESIGNATION AND TERMS OF SECURITIES	4
SECTION 2.02	FORM OF SECURITIES AND TRUSTEE'S CERTIFICATE	5
SECTION 2.03	DENOMINATIONS: PROVISIONS FOR PAYMENT	6
SECTION 2.04	EXECUTION AND AUTHENTICATION	7
SECTION 2.05	REGISTRATION OF TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE	7
SECTION 2.06	TEMPORARY SECURITIES	8
SECTION 2.07	MUTILATED, DESTROYED, LOST OR STOLEN SECURITIES	8
SECTION 2.08	CANCELLATION	9
SECTION 2.09	BENEFITS OF INDENTURE	9
SECTION 2.10	AUTHENTICATING AGENT	9
SECTION 2.11	GLOBAL SECURITIES	10
ARTICLE III	REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES AND SINKING FUND PROVISIONS	11
SECTION 3.01	REDEMPTION	11
SECTION 3.02	NOTICE OF REDEMPTION	11
SECTION 3.03	PAYMENT UPON REDEMPTION	12
SECTION 3.04	SINKING FUND	12
SECTION 3.05	SATISFACTION OF SINKING FUND PAYMENTS WITH SECURITIES	13
SECTION 3.06	REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES FOR SINKING FUND	13
ARTICLE IV	COVENANTS	13
SECTION 4.01	PAYMENT OF PRINCIPAL, PREMIUM AND INTEREST	13
SECTION 4.02	MAINTENANCE OF OFFICE OR AGENCY	13
SECTION 4.03	PAYING AGENTS	14
SECTION 4.04	APPOINTMENT TO FILL VACANCY IN OFFICE OF TRUSTEE	14
SECTION 4.05	COMPLIANCE WITH CONSOLIDATION PROVISIONS	14
SECTION 4.06	STATEMENT BY OFFICERS AS TO DEFAULT	14
ARTICLE V	SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE	15
SECTION 5.01	COMPANY TO FURNISH TRUSTEE NAMES AND ADDRESSES OF SECURITYHOLDERS	15
SECTION 5.02	PRESERVATION OF INFORMATION; COMMUNICATIONS WITH SECURITYHOLDERS	15
SECTION 5.03	REPORTS BY THE COMPANY	15
SECTION 5.04	REPORTS BY THE TRUSTEE	16
ARTICLE VI	REMEDIES OF THE TRUSTEE AND SECURITYHOLDERS ON EVENT OF DEFAULT	16
SECTION 6.01	EVENTS OF DEFAULT	16
SECTION 6.02	COLLECTION OF INDEBTEDNESS AND SUITS FOR ENFORCEMENT BY TRUSTEE	17

SECTION 6.03 APPLICATION OF MONEYS COLLECTED	18
SECTION 6.04 LIMITATION ON SUITS	19
SECTION 6.05 RIGHTS AND REMEDIES CUMULATIVE; DELAY OR OMISSION NOT WAIVER	19
SECTION 6.06 CONTROL BY SECURITYHOLDERS	20
SECTION 6.07 UNDERTAKING TO PAY COSTS	20
ARTICLE VII CONCERNING THE TRUSTEE	20
SECTION 7.01 CERTAIN DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF TRUSTEE	20
SECTION 7.02 NOTICE OF DEFAULTS	21
SECTION 7.03 CERTAIN RIGHTS OF TRUSTEE	21
SECTION 7.04 TRUSTEE NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR RECITALS OR ISSUANCE OR SECURITIES	22
SECTION 7.05 MAY HOLD SECURITIES	23
SECTION 7.06 MONEYS HELD IN TRUST	23
SECTION 7.07 COMPENSATION AND REIMBURSEMENT	23
SECTION 7.08 RELIANCE ON OFFICERS' CERTIFICATE	23
SECTION 7.09 DISQUALIFICATION; CONFLICTING INTERESTS	24
SECTION 7.10 CORPORATE TRUSTEE REQUIRED; ELIGIBILITY	24
SECTION 7.11 RESIGNATION AND REMOVAL; APPOINTMENT OF SUCCESSOR	24
SECTION 7.12 ACCEPTANCE OF APPOINTMENT BY SUCCESSOR	25
SECTION 7.13 MERGER, CONVERSION, CONSOLIDATION OR SUCCESSION TO BUSINESS	26
SECTION 7.14 PREFERENTIAL COLLECTION OF CLAIMS AGAINST THE COMPANY	26
ARTICLE VIII CONCERNING THE SECURITYHOLDERS	26
SECTION 8.01 EVIDENCE OF ACTION BY SECURITYHOLDERS	26
SECTION 8.02 PROOF OF EXECUTION BY SECURITYHOLDERS	27
SECTION 8.03 WHO MAY BE DEEMED OWNERS	27
SECTION 8.04 CERTAIN SECURITIES OWNED BY COMPANY DISREGARDED	27
SECTION 8.05 ACTIONS BINDING ON FUTURE SECURITYHOLDERS	27
ARTICLE IX SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	28
SECTION 9.01 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITHOUT THE CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS	28
SECTION 9.02 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITH CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS	28
SECTION 9.03 EFFECT OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	29
SECTION 9.04 SECURITIES AFFECTED BY SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	29
SECTION 9.05 EXECUTION OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	29
ARTICLE X SUCCESSOR ENTITY	30
SECTION 10.01 COMPANY MAY CONSOLIDATE, ETC.	30
SECTION 10.02 SUCCESSOR ENTITY SUBSTITUTED	30
SECTION 10.03 EVIDENCE OF CONSOLIDATION, ETC. TO TRUSTEE	30
ARTICLE XI SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE; DEFEASANCE	31
SECTION 11.01 SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE	31
SECTION 11.02 DEFEASANCE	31
SECTION 11.03 DEPOSITED MONEYS TO BE HELD IN TRUST	32

SECTION 11.04 PAYMENT OF MONEYS HELD BY PAYING AGENTS	32
SECTION 11.05 REPAYMENT TO COMPANY	32
ARTICLE XII IMMUNITY OF INCORPORATORS, STOCKHOLDERS, OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS	33
SECTION 12.01 NO RECOURSE	33
ARTICLE XIII MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS	33
SECTION 13.01 EFFECT ON SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS	33
SECTION 13.02 ACTIONS BY SUCCESSOR	33
SECTION 13.03 SURRENDER OF COMPANY POWERS	33
SECTION 13.04 NOTICES	33
SECTION 13.05 GOVERNING LAW; WAIVER OF TRIAL BY JURY	34
SECTION 13.06 TREATMENT OF SECURITIES AS DEBT	34
SECTION 13.07 COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES AND OPINIONS	34
SECTION 13.08 PAYMENTS ON BUSINESS DAYS	34
SECTION 13.09 CONFLICT WITH TRUST INDENTURE ACT	34
SECTION 13.10 COUNTERPARTS	34
SECTION 13.11 SEPARABILITY	35
SECTION 13.12 ASSIGNMENT	35

(2) This Table of Contents does not constitute part of the Indenture and shall not have any bearing on the interpretation of any of its terms or provisions.

INDENTURE, dated as of [_____] [___], 20[___], between Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc., a Connecticut corporation (the “Company”), and [_____] a [_____] as trustee (the “Trustee”):

RECITALS OF THE COMPANY

WHEREAS, for its lawful corporate purposes, the Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance of debt securities (hereinafter referred to as the “Securities”), in an unlimited aggregate principal amount to be issued from time to time in one or more series as provided in this Indenture, as registered Securities without coupons, to be authenticated by the certificate of the Trustee;

WHEREAS, to provide the terms and conditions upon which the Securities are to be authenticated, issued, and delivered, the Company has duly authorized the execution of this Indenture; and

WHEREAS, all things necessary to make this Indenture a valid agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the Holders thereof, it is mutually covenanted and agreed as follows for the equal and ratable benefit of the Holders of Securities or of series thereof.

ARTICLE I DEFINITIONS

SECTION 1.01 DEFINITIONS OF TERMS.

The terms defined in this Section (except as in this Indenture otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires) for all purposes of this Indenture and of any indenture supplemental hereto shall have the respective meanings specified in this Section and shall include the plural as well as the singular. All other terms used in this Indenture that are defined in the Trust Indenture Act, or that are by reference in said Trust Indenture Act defined in the Securities Act (except as herein otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires), shall have the meanings assigned to such terms in said Trust Indenture Act and in said Securities Act as in force at the date of the execution of this instrument.

“ARTICLE”, “SECTION” or other subdivisions refer to Articles, Sections or other subdivisions of this Indenture.

“AUTHENTICATING AGENT” means an authenticating agent with respect to all or any of the series of Securities appointed with respect to all or any series of the Securities by the Trustee pursuant to Section 2.10.

“BANKRUPTCY LAW” means Title 11, U.S. Code, or any similar federal or state law for the relief of debtors.

“BOARD OF DIRECTORS” means the Board of Directors of the Company or any duly authorized committee of such Board.

“BOARD RESOLUTION” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification.

“BUSINESS DAY” means, with respect to any series of Securities, any day other than a Saturday or Sunday, or a day on which federal or state banking institutions in [_____] are authorized or obligated by law, executive order or regulation to close.

“CERTIFICATE” means a certificate signed by the principal executive officer, the principal financial officer or the principal accounting officer of the Company. The Certificate need not comply with the provisions of Section 13.07.

“COMMISSION” means the Securities and Exchange Commission.

“COMPANY” means Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc., a Connecticut corporation, and its subsidiaries, and, subject to the provisions of Article X, shall also include its successors and assigns.

“CORPORATE TRUST OFFICE” means the office of the Trustee at which, at any particular time, its corporate trust business shall be principally administered, which office at the date hereof is located at [_____].

“COVENANT DEFEASANCE” has the meaning given in Section 11.02.

“CUSTODIAN” means any receiver, trustee, assignee, liquidator or similar official under any Bankruptcy Law.

“DEFAULT” means any event, act or condition that with notice or lapse of time, or both, would constitute an Event of Default.

“DEFAULTED INTEREST” has the meaning given in Section 2.03.

“DEPOSITARY” means, with respect to Securities of any series, for which the Company shall determine that such Securities will be issued as a Global Security, [_____], another clearing agency, or any successor registered as a clearing agency under the Exchange Act, or other applicable statute or regulation, which, in each case, shall be designated by the Company pursuant to either Section 2.01 or 2.11.

“EVENT OF DEFAULT” means, with respect to Securities of a particular series any event specified in Section 6.01, continued for the period of time, if any, therein designated.

“EXCHANGE ACT” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or any successor statute or statutes thereto.

“GLOBAL SECURITY” means, with respect to any series of Securities, a Security executed by the Company and delivered by the Trustee to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository’s instruction, all in accordance with the Indenture, which shall be registered in the name of the Depository or its nominee.

“GOVERNMENTAL OBLIGATIONS” means securities that are (i) direct obligations of the United States of America for the payment of which its full faith and credit is pledged or (ii) obligations of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by the United States of America that, in either case, are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof, and shall also include a depository receipt issued by a bank (as defined in Section 3(a)(2) of the Securities Act) as custodian with respect to any such Governmental Obligation or a specific payment of principal of or interest on any such Governmental Obligation held by such custodian for the account of the Holder of such depository receipt; provided, however, that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the Holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the Governmental Obligation or the specific payment of principal of or interest on the Governmental Obligation evidenced by such depository receipt.

“HEREIN”, “HEREOF” and “HEREUNDER”, and other words of similar import, refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section, or other subdivision.

“INCLUDING”, unless the context requires otherwise, means including without limitation.

“INDENTURE” means this instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into in accordance with the terms hereof, including, for all purposes of this instrument and any such supplemental indenture, the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act that are deemed to be a part of and govern this instrument and any such supplemental indenture, respectively. The term “Indenture” shall also include the terms of particular series of Securities established as contemplated by Section 2.01.

“INTEREST PAYMENT DATE”, when used with respect to any installment of interest on a Security of a particular series, means the date specified in such Security or in a Board Resolution or in an indenture supplemental hereto with respect to such series as the fixed date on which an installment of interest with respect to Securities of that series is due and payable.

“LEGAL DEFEASANCE” has the meaning given in Section 11.02.

“OFFICERS’ CERTIFICATE” means a certificate signed by the President or a Vice President and by the Treasurer or an Assistant Treasurer or the Controller or an Assistant Controller or the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company that is delivered to the Trustee in accordance with the terms hereof. Each such certificate shall include the statements provided for in Section 13.07, if and to the extent required by the provisions thereof.

“OPINION OF COUNSEL” means an opinion in writing of legal counsel acceptable to the Trustee, who may be an employee of or counsel for the Company that is delivered to the Trustee in accordance with the terms hereof. Each such opinion shall include the statements provided for in Section 13.07, if and to the extent required by the provisions thereof.

“ORIGINAL ISSUE DISCOUNT SECURITY” means any Security which provides for an amount less than the principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.01.

“OUTSTANDING”, when used with reference to Securities of any series, means, subject to the provisions of Section 8.04, as of any particular time, all Securities of that series theretofore authenticated and delivered by the Trustee under this Indenture, except (a) Securities theretofore canceled by the Trustee or any paying agent, or delivered to the Trustee or any paying agent for cancellation or that have previously been canceled; (b) Securities or portions thereof for the payment or redemption of which moneys or Governmental Obligations in the necessary amount shall have been deposited in trust with the Trustee or with any paying agent (other than the Company) or shall have been set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own paying agent); provided, however, that if such Securities or portions of such Securities are to be redeemed prior to the maturity thereof, notice of such redemption shall have been given as in Article III; or provision satisfactory to the Trustee shall have been made for giving such notice; and (c) Securities in lieu of or in substitution for which other Securities shall have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to the terms of Section 2.07; provided, however, that in determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of the Outstanding Securities have given, made or taken any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action hereunder as of any date, the principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security which shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the amount of the principal thereof which would be due and payable as of such date upon acceleration of the maturity thereof to such date pursuant to Section 6.01.

“PERSON” means any individual, corporation, limited liability company, partnership, joint-venture, joint-stock company, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof.

“PREDECESSOR SECURITY” of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under Section 2.07 in lieu of a lost, destroyed or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the lost, destroyed or stolen Security.

“RESPONSIBLE OFFICER”, when used with respect to the Trustee, means any officer assigned to the [_____] [Division / Unit] (or any successor division or unit) of the Trustee located at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, who shall have direct responsibility for the administration of this Indenture, and for the purposes of Section 7.01(b)(ii) and Section 315(b) of the Trust Indenture Act shall also include any other officer of the Trustee to whom any corporate trust matter is referred because of his or her knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject.

“SECURITIES” means the debt securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture.

“SECURITIES ACT” means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or any successor statute or statutes thereto.

“SECURITYHOLDER”, “HOLDER of SECURITIES”, “REGISTERED HOLDER”, “HOLDER”, or other similar term, means the Person or Persons in whose name or names a particular Security shall be registered on the books of the Company kept for that purpose in accordance with the terms of this Indenture.

“SECURITY REGISTER” has the meaning given in Section 2.05.

“SECURITY REGISTRAR” has the meaning given in Section 2.05.

“SUBSIDIARY” means, with respect to any Person, (i) any corporation at least a majority of whose outstanding Voting Stock shall at the time be owned, directly or indirectly, by such Person or by one or more of its Subsidiaries or by such Person and one or more of its Subsidiaries, (ii) any general partnership, limited liability company, joint venture or similar entity, at least a majority of whose outstanding partnership or similar interests shall at the time be owned by such Person, or by one or more of its Subsidiaries, or by such Person and one or more of its Subsidiaries and (iii) any limited partnership of which such Person or any of its Subsidiaries is a general partner.

“TRUSTEE” means [] and, subject to the provisions of Article VII, shall also include its successors and assigns, and, if at any time there is more than one Person acting in such capacity hereunder, “Trustee” shall mean each such Person. The term “Trustee” as used with respect to a particular series of the Securities shall mean the trustee with respect to that series.

“TRUST INDENTURE ACT” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, subject to the provisions of Sections 9.01, 9.02, and 10.01, as in effect at the date of execution of this instrument.

“VOTING STOCK”, as applied to stock of any Person, means shares, interests, participations or other equivalents in the equity interest (however designated) in such Person having ordinary voting power for the election of a majority of the directors (or the equivalent) of such Person, other than shares, interests, participations or other equivalents having such power only by reason of the occurrence of a contingency.

ARTICLE II ISSUE, DESCRIPTION, TERMS, EXECUTION, REGISTRATION AND EXCHANGE OF SECURITIES

SECTION 2.01 DESIGNATION AND TERMS OF SECURITIES.

The aggregate principal amount of Securities that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited. The Securities may be issued in one or more series up to the aggregate principal amount, if any, of Securities of that series from time to time authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution or pursuant to one or more indentures supplemental hereto. Prior to the initial issuance of Securities of any series, there shall be established in or pursuant to a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officers’ Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto:

- (1) the title of the Security of the series (which shall distinguish the Securities of the series from all other Securities);
- (2) any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of that series);
- (3) the date or dates on which the principal of the Securities of the series is payable, any original issue discount that may apply to the Securities of that series upon their issuance, the principal amount due at maturity and the place(s) of payment;
- (4) the rate or rates at which the Securities of the series shall bear interest or the manner of calculation of such rate or rates, if any;
- (5) the date or dates from which such interest shall accrue, the Interest Payment Dates on which such interest will be payable or the manner of determination of such Interest Payment Dates, the place(s) of payment, and the record date or other method for the determination of Holders to whom interest is payable on any such Interest Payment Dates;
- (6) the right, if any, to extend the interest payment periods and the duration of such extension;
- (7) the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which, Securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company;
- (8) the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem or purchase Securities of the series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provisions (including payments made in cash in satisfaction of future sinking fund obligations) or at the option of a Holder thereof and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which, and the terms and conditions upon which, Securities of the series shall be redeemed or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;

- (9) the form of the Securities of the series, including the form of the Trustee's certificate of authentication for such series;
- (10) if other than denominations of one thousand U.S. dollars (\$1,000) or any integral multiple thereof, the denominations in which the Securities of the series shall be issuable (including denominations of foreign currency);
- (11) any and all other terms with respect to such series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the terms of this Indenture);
- (12) whether the Securities of the series are issuable as a Global Security and, in such case, the identity of the Depository for such series and any other or different terms in respect of such Global Security;
- (13) whether the Securities of the series will be convertible into shares of common stock or other securities of the Company and, if so, the terms and conditions upon which such Securities will be so convertible, including the conversion price and the conversion period;
- (14) if other than the principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of Securities of the series which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.01;
- (15) any additional or different Events of Default or restrictive covenants provided for with respect to the Securities of the series;
- (16) if applicable, that the Securities of the series, in whole or in specified part, shall be defeasible pursuant to Section 11.02 and, if other than by a Board Resolution, the manner in which any election by the Company to defease such Securities shall be evidenced;
- (17) if other than the currency of the United States of America, the currency, currencies or currency units in which the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of the series shall be payable and the manner of determining the equivalent thereof in the currency of the United States of America for any purpose, including for purposes of the definition of "Outstanding" in Section 1.01, and/or the property, including securities of the Company, in which the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of the series may be payable and the terms and conditions of such payment in property, including whether at the option of the Company or the Securityholder; and
- (18) the terms and conditions, if any, upon which the Company shall pay amounts in addition to the stated interest, premium, if any and principal amounts of the Securities of the series to any Securityholder that is not a "United States person" for federal tax purposes.

All Securities of any one series shall be substantially identical except as to denomination and except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to any such Board Resolution or in any indentures supplemental hereto. If any of the terms of the series are established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Officers' Certificate setting forth the terms of the series. Securities of any particular series may be issued at various times, with different dates on which the principal or any installment of principal is payable, with different rates of interest, if any, or different methods by which rates of interest may be determined, with different dates on which such interest may be payable and with different redemption dates. Notwithstanding Section 2.01(2) and unless otherwise expressly provided with respect to a series of Securities, the aggregate principal amount of a series of Securities may be increased and additional Securities of such series may be issued up to the maximum aggregate principal amount authorized with respect to such series as increased.

SECTION 2.02 FORM OF SECURITIES AND TRUSTEE'S CERTIFICATE.

The Securities of any series and the Trustee's certificate of authentication to be borne by such Securities shall be substantially of the tenor and purport as set forth in one or more indentures supplemental hereto or as provided in or pursuant to a Board Resolution and as set forth in an Officers' Certificate. The Securities may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification or designation and such legends or endorsements printed, lithographed or engraved thereon as the Company may deem appropriate and as are not inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, or as may be required to comply with any law or with any rule or regulation made pursuant thereto or with any rule or regulation of any stock exchange on which Securities of that series may be listed, or to conform to usage.

SECTION 2.03 DENOMINATIONS: PROVISIONS FOR PAYMENT.

The Securities shall be issuable as registered Securities and in the denominations of one thousand U.S. dollars (\$1,000) or any integral multiple thereof, subject to Section 2.01(10). The Securities of a particular series shall bear interest payable on the dates and at the rates specified or provided for with respect to that series. Except as contemplated by Section 2.01(17), the principal of and the interest on the Securities of any series, as well as any premium thereon in case of redemption thereof prior to maturity, shall be payable in the coin or currency of the United States of America that at the time is legal tender for public and private debt, at the office or agency of the Company maintained for that purpose in [_____]; provided, however, that at the option of the Company payment of interest may be made by check mailed to the address of the Person entitled thereto as such address shall appear in the Security Register. Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication by the Trustee. Except as contemplated by Section 2.01(4), interest on the Securities shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year composed of twelve 30-day months. Except as contemplated by Section 2.01(5), the interest installment on any Security that is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date for Securities of that series shall be paid to the Person in whose name said Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the regular record date for such interest installment. In the event that any Security of a particular series or portion thereof is called for redemption and the redemption date is subsequent to a regular record date with respect to any Interest Payment Date and prior to such Interest Payment Date, interest on such Security will be paid upon presentation and surrender of such Security as provided in Section 3.03. Any interest on any Security that is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date for Securities of the same series (herein called "Defaulted Interest") shall forthwith cease to be payable to the registered Holder on the relevant regular record date by virtue of having been such Holder; and such Defaulted Interest shall be paid by the Company, at its election, as provided in clause (1) or clause (2) below:

(1) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on Securities to the Persons in whose names such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a special record date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner: the Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each such Security and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this clause provided. Thereupon the Trustee shall fix a special record date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall not be more than 15 nor less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company of such special record date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the special record date therefor to be mailed, first class postage prepaid, to each Securityholder at his or her address as it appears in the Security Register (as hereinafter defined), not less than 10 days prior to such special record date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the special record date therefor having been mailed as aforesaid, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose names such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered on such special record date.

(2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on any Securities in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this clause, such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee. Unless otherwise set forth in a Board Resolution or one or more indentures supplemental hereto establishing the terms of any series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof, the term "regular record date" as used in this Section with respect to a series of Securities with respect to any Interest Payment Date for such series shall mean either the fifteenth day of the month immediately preceding the month in which an Interest Payment Date established for such series pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof shall occur, if such Interest Payment Date is the first day of a month, or the last day of the month immediately preceding the month in which an Interest Payment Date established for such series pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof shall occur, if such Interest Payment Date is the fifteenth day of a month, whether or not such date is a Business Day. Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section, each Security of a series delivered under this Indenture upon transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security of such series shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, that were carried by such other Security.

SECTION 2.04 EXECUTION AND AUTHENTICATION.

The Securities shall be signed on behalf of the Company by its President, or one of its Vice Presidents, or its Treasurer, or one of its Assistant Treasurers, attested by its Secretary or one of its Assistant Secretaries. Signatures may be in the form of a manual or facsimile signature. The Company may use the facsimile signature of any Person who shall have been a President or Vice President thereof, or of any Person who shall have been the Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary thereof, notwithstanding the fact that at the time the Securities shall be authenticated and delivered or disposed of such Person shall have ceased to be the President or a Vice President, or the Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary, of the Company. The Securities may contain such notations, legends or endorsements required by law, stock exchange rule or usage. A Security shall not be valid until authenticated manually by an authorized signatory of the Trustee, or by an Authenticating Agent. Such signature shall be conclusive evidence and the only evidence that the Security so authenticated has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder and that the Holder is entitled to the benefits of this Indenture. At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities of any series executed by the Company to the Trustee for authentication, together with a written order of the Company for the authentication and delivery of such Securities, signed by its President or any Vice President and its Secretary or any Assistant Secretary, and the Trustee in accordance with such written order shall authenticate and deliver such Securities. In authenticating such Securities and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 7.01) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the form and terms thereof have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture and that such Securities, when authenticated and delivered by the Trustee and issued by the Company in the manner and subject to any conditions specified in such Opinion of Counsel, will constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company enforceable in accordance with their terms, subject to any Bankruptcy Law or other insolvency, fraudulent transfer, reorganization, moratorium and similar laws of general applicability relating to or affecting creditors' rights and to general equity principles and to other customary exceptions. The Trustee shall not be required to authenticate such Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner that is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustee.

SECTION 2.05 REGISTRATION OF TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE.

(a) Securities of any series may be exchanged upon presentation thereof at the office or agency of the Company designated for such purpose in [_____], for other Securities of such series of authorized denominations, and for a like aggregate principal amount, upon payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge in relation thereto, all as provided in this Section. In respect of any Securities so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, the Trustee shall authenticate and such office or agency shall deliver in exchange therefor the Security or Securities of the same series that the Securityholder making the exchange shall be entitled to receive, bearing numbers not contemporaneously outstanding.

(b) The Company shall keep, or cause to be kept, at its office or agency designated for such purpose in [_____], or such other location designated by the Company a register or registers (herein referred to as the "Security Register") in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall register the Securities and the transfers of Securities as in this Article provided and which at all reasonable times shall be open for inspection by the Trustee. The registrar for the purpose of registering Securities and transfer of Securities as herein provided shall be appointed as authorized by Board Resolution (the "Security Registrar"). Upon surrender for transfer of any Security at the office or agency of the Company designated for such purpose, the Company shall execute, the Trustee shall authenticate and such office or agency shall deliver in the name of the transferee or transferees a new Security or Securities of the same series as the Security presented for a like aggregate principal amount. All Securities presented or surrendered for exchange or registration of transfer, as provided in this Section, shall be accompanied (if so required by the Company or the Security Registrar) by a written instrument or instruments of transfer, in form satisfactory to the Company or the Security Registrar, duly executed by the registered Holder or by such Holder's duly authorized attorney in writing.

(c) No service charge shall be made for any exchange or registration of transfer of Securities, or issue of new Securities in case of partial redemption of any series, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge in relation thereto, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 2.06, Section 3.03(b) and Section 9.04 not involving any transfer. The Company shall not be required (i) to issue, exchange or register the transfer of any Securities during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of the mailing of a notice of redemption of less than all the Outstanding Securities of the same series and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, nor (ii) to register the transfer of or exchange any Securities of any series or portions thereof called for redemption. The provisions of this Section 2.05 are, with respect to any Global Security, subject to Section 2.11 hereof.

SECTION 2.06 TEMPORARY SECURITIES.

Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities (printed, lithographed or typewritten) of any authorized denomination. Such temporary Securities shall be substantially in the form of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued, but with such omissions, insertions and variations as may be appropriate for temporary Securities, all as may be determined by the Company. Every temporary Security of any series shall be executed by the Company and be authenticated by the Trustee upon the same conditions and in substantially the same manner, and with like effect, as the definitive Securities of such series. Without unnecessary delay the Company will execute and will furnish definitive Securities of such series and thereupon any or all temporary Securities of such series may be surrendered in exchange therefor (without charge to the Holders), at the office or agency of the Company designated for the purpose in [_____], and the Trustee shall authenticate and such office or agency shall deliver in exchange for such temporary Securities an equal aggregate principal amount of definitive Securities of such series, unless the Company advises the Trustee to the effect that definitive Securities need not be executed and furnished until further notice from the Company. Until so exchanged, the temporary Securities of such series shall be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series authenticated and delivered hereunder.

SECTION 2.07 MUTILATED, DESTROYED, LOST OR STOLEN SECURITIES.

In case any temporary or definitive Security shall become mutilated or be destroyed, lost or stolen, the Company (subject to the next succeeding sentence) shall execute, and upon the Company's request the Trustee (subject as aforesaid) shall authenticate and deliver, a new Security of the same series, bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding, in exchange and substitution for the mutilated Security, or in lieu of and in substitution for the Security so destroyed, lost or stolen. In every case the applicant for a substituted Security shall furnish to the Company and the Trustee such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them harmless, and, in every case of destruction, loss or theft, the applicant shall also furnish to the Company and the Trustee evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of the applicant's Security and of the ownership thereof. The Trustee may authenticate any such substituted Security and deliver the same upon the written request or authorization of any officer of the Company. Upon the issuance of any substituted Security, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith. In case any Security that has matured or is about to mature shall become mutilated or be destroyed, lost or stolen, the Company may, instead of issuing a substitute Security, pay or authorize the payment of the same (without surrender thereof except in the case of a mutilated Security) if the applicant for such payment shall furnish to the Company and the Trustee such security or indemnity as they may require to save them harmless, and, in case of destruction, loss or theft, evidence to the satisfaction of the Company and the Trustee of the destruction, loss or theft of such Security and of the ownership thereof. Every replacement Security issued pursuant to the provisions of this Section shall constitute an additional contractual obligation of the Company whether or not the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be found at any time, or be enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of the same series duly issued hereunder. All Securities shall be held and owned upon the express condition that the foregoing provisions are exclusive with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities, and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) any and all other rights or remedies, notwithstanding any law or statute existing or hereafter enacted to the contrary with respect to the replacement or payment of negotiable instruments or other securities without their surrender.

SECTION 2.08 CANCELLATION.

All Securities surrendered for the purpose of payment, redemption, exchange or registration of transfer shall, if surrendered to the Company or any paying agent, be delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, or, if surrendered to the Trustee, shall be cancelled by it, and no Securities shall be issued in lieu thereof except as expressly required or permitted by any of the provisions of this Indenture. On request of the Company at the time of such surrender, the Trustee shall deliver to the Company canceled Securities held by the Trustee. In the absence of such request the Trustee may dispose of canceled Securities in accordance with its standard procedures and deliver a certificate of disposition to the Company. If the Company shall otherwise acquire any of the Securities, however, such acquisition shall not operate as a redemption or satisfaction of the indebtedness represented by such Securities unless and until the same are delivered to the Trustee for cancellation.

SECTION 2.09 BENEFITS OF INDENTURE.

Nothing in this Indenture or in the Securities, express or implied, shall give or be construed to give to any Person, other than the parties hereto and the Holders of the Securities any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under or in respect of this Indenture, or under any covenant, condition or provision herein contained; all such covenants, conditions and provisions being for the sole benefit of the parties hereto and of the Holders of the Securities.

SECTION 2.10 AUTHENTICATING AGENT.

So long as any of the Securities of any series remain Outstanding there may be an Authenticating Agent for any or all such series of Securities which the Trustee shall have the right to appoint. Said Authenticating Agent shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series issued upon exchange, transfer or partial redemption thereof, and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. All references in this Indenture to the authentication of Securities by the Trustee shall be deemed to include authentication by an Authenticating Agent for such series. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and shall be a corporation that has a combined capital and surplus, as most recently reported or determined by it, sufficient under the laws of any jurisdiction under which it is organized or in which it is doing business to conduct a trust business, and that is otherwise authorized under such laws to conduct such business and is subject to supervision or examination by federal or state authorities. If at any time any Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with these provisions, it shall resign immediately. Any Authenticating Agent may at any time resign by giving written notice of resignation to the Trustee and to the Company. The Trustee may at any time (and upon request by the Company shall) terminate the agency of any Authenticating Agent by giving written notice of termination to such Authenticating Agent and to the Company. Upon resignation, termination or cessation of eligibility of any Authenticating Agent, the Trustee may appoint an eligible successor Authenticating Agent acceptable to the Company. Any successor Authenticating Agent, upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder, shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent pursuant hereto. Any corporation into which an Authenticating Agent may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which such Authenticating Agent shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to the corporate agency or corporate trust business of an Authenticating Agent, shall continue to be an Authenticating Agent, provided that such corporation shall be otherwise eligible under this Section, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of the Trustee or the Authenticating Agent.

SECTION 2.11 GLOBAL SECURITIES.

(a) If the Company shall establish pursuant to Section 2.01 that the Securities of a particular series are to be issued as a Global Security, then the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall, in accordance with Section 2.04, authenticate and deliver, a Global Security that

(1) shall represent, and shall be denominated in an amount equal to the aggregate principal amount of, all or a portion of the Outstanding Securities of such series,

(2) shall be registered in the name of the Depository or its nominee,

(3) shall be delivered by the Trustee to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository's instruction, and

(4) shall bear a legend substantially to the following effect: "Except as otherwise provided in Section 2.11 of the Indenture, this Security may be transferred, in whole but not in part, only to the Depository, another nominee of the Depository or to a successor Depository or to a nominee of such successor Depository."

(b) Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 2.05, the Global Security of a series may be transferred, in whole but not in part and in the manner provided in Section 2.05, only to the Depository for such series, another nominee of the Depository for such series, or to a successor Depository for such series selected or approved by the Company or to a nominee of such successor Depository.

(c) If at any time the Depository for a series of the Securities notifies the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depository for such series or if at any time the Depository for such series shall no longer be registered or in good standing under the Exchange Act, or other applicable statute or regulation, and a successor Depository for such series is not appointed by the Company within 90 days after the Company receives such notice or becomes aware of such condition, as the case may be, this Section 2.11 shall no longer be applicable to the Securities of such series and the Company will execute, and subject to Section 2.05, the Trustee will authenticate and deliver the Securities of such series in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security of such series in exchange for such Global Security. In addition, the Company may at any time determine that the Securities of any series shall no longer be represented by a Global Security and that the provisions of this Section 2.11 shall no longer apply to the Securities of such series. In such event the Company will execute and subject to Section 2.05, the Trustee, upon receipt of an Officers' Certificate evidencing such determination by the Company, will authenticate and deliver the Securities of such series in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security of such series in exchange for such Global Security. Upon the exchange of the Global Security for such Securities in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, the Global Security shall be canceled by the Trustee. Such Securities in definitive registered form issued in exchange for the Global Security pursuant to this Section 2.11(c) shall be registered in such names and in such authorized denominations as the Depository, pursuant to instructions from its direct or indirect participants or otherwise, shall instruct the Trustee. The Trustee shall deliver such Securities to the Depository for delivery to the Persons in whose names such Securities are so registered.

(d) None of the Trustee, the Security Registrar or any paying agent shall have any responsibility or obligation to any beneficial owner in a Global Security, a member of, or a participant in the Depository or other Person with respect to the accuracy of the records of the Depository or its nominee or of any participant or member thereof, with respect to any ownership interest in the Securities or with respect to the delivery to any participant, member, beneficial owner or other Person (other than the Depository) of any notice (including any notice of redemption) or the payment of any amount, under or with respect to such Securities. All notices and communications to be given to the Securityholders and all payments to be made to Securityholders under the Securities and this Indenture shall be given or made only to or upon the order of the registered holders (which shall be the Depository or its nominee in the case of the Global Security). The rights of beneficial owners in the Global Security shall be exercised only through the Depository subject to the applicable procedures. The Trustee, the Security Registrar and any paying agent shall be entitled to rely and shall be fully protected in relying upon information furnished by the Depository with respect to its members, participants and any beneficial owners. The Trustee, the Security Registrar and any paying agent shall be entitled to deal with any depository (including the Depository), and any nominee thereof, that is the registered holder of any Global Security for all purposes of this Indenture relating to such Global Security (including the payment of principal, premium, if any, and interest and additional amounts, if any, and the giving of instructions or directions by or to the owner or holder of a beneficial ownership interest in such Global Security) as the sole holder of such Global Security and shall have no obligations to the beneficial owners thereof. None of the Trustee, the Security Registrar or any paying agent shall have any responsibility or liability for any acts or omissions of any such depository with respect to such Global Security, for the records of any such depository, including records in respect of beneficial ownership interests in respect of any such Global Security, for any transactions between such depository and any participant in such depository or between or among any such depository, any such participant and/or any holder or owner of a beneficial interest in such Global Security, or for any transfers of beneficial interests in any such Global Security.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, with respect to any Global Security, nothing herein shall prevent the Company, the Trustee, the Security Registrar, any paying agent, or any other agent of the Company or any agent of the Trustee, from giving effect to any written certification, proxy or other authorization furnished by any depository (including the Depository), as a Securityholder, with respect to such Global Security or impair, as between such depository and owners of beneficial interests in such Global Security, the operation of customary practices governing the exercise of the rights of such depository (or its nominee) as Holder of such Global Security.

**ARTICLE III
REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES AND SINKING FUND PROVISIONS**

SECTION 3.01 REDEMPTION.

The Company may redeem the Securities of any series issued hereunder on and after the dates and in accordance with the terms established for such series pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof.

SECTION 3.02 NOTICE OF REDEMPTION.

(a) In case the Company shall desire to exercise such right to redeem all or, as the case may be, a portion of the Securities of any series in accordance with the right reserved so to do, the Company shall (upon five Business Days prior notice to the Trustee, unless a shorter notice period shall be acceptable to the Trustee), or shall cause the Trustee to, give notice of such redemption to Holders of the Securities of such series to be redeemed by mailing, first class postage prepaid, a notice of such redemption not less than 30 days and not more than 90 days before the date fixed for redemption of that series to such Holders at their last addresses as they shall appear upon the Security Register unless a shorter period is specified in the Securities to be redeemed. Any notice that is mailed in the manner herein provided shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given, whether or not the registered Holder receives the notice. In any case, failure duly to give such notice to the Holder of any Security of any series designated for redemption in whole or in part, or any defect in the notice, shall not affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of any other Securities of such series or any other series. In the case of any redemption of Securities prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, the Company shall furnish the Trustee with an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with any such restriction. Each such notice of redemption shall specify the date fixed for redemption and the redemption price at which Securities of that series are to be redeemed, and shall state that payment of the redemption price of such Securities to be redeemed will be made at the office or agency of the Company in [_____], upon presentation and surrender of such Securities, that interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption will be paid as specified in said notice, that from and after said date interest will cease to accrue and that the redemption is for a sinking fund, if such is the case. If less than all the Securities of a series are to be redeemed, the notice to the Holders of Securities of that series to be redeemed in whole or in part shall specify the particular Securities to be so redeemed. In case any Security is to be redeemed in part only, the notice that relates to such Security shall state the portion of the principal amount thereof to be redeemed, and shall state that on and after the redemption date, upon surrender of such Security, a new Security or Securities of such series in principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion thereof will be issued.

(b) If less than all the Securities of a series are to be redeemed, the Company shall give the Trustee at least 45 days' notice in advance of the date fixed for redemption as to the aggregate principal amount of Securities of the series to be redeemed, and thereupon the Trustee shall select, by lot or in such other manner as it shall deem appropriate and fair in its discretion and that may provide for the selection of a portion or portions (equal to one thousand U.S. dollars (\$1,000) or any integral multiple thereof) of the principal amount of such Securities of a denomination larger than \$1,000, the Securities to be redeemed and shall thereafter promptly notify the Company in writing of the numbers of the Securities to be redeemed, in whole or in part. The Company may, if and whenever it shall so elect, by delivery of instructions signed on its behalf by its President or any Vice President, instruct the Trustee or any paying agent to call all or any part of the Securities of a particular series for redemption and to give notice of redemption in the manner set forth in this Section, such notice to be in the name of the Company or its own name as the Trustee or such paying agent as it may deem advisable. In any case in which notice of redemption is to be given by the Trustee or any such paying agent, the Company shall deliver or cause to be delivered to, or permit to remain with, the Trustee or such paying agent, as the case may be, such Security Register, transfer books or other records, or suitable copies or extracts therefrom, sufficient to enable the Trustee or such paying agent to give any notice by mail that may be required under the provisions of this Section.

SECTION 3.03 PAYMENT UPON REDEMPTION.

(a) If the giving of notice of redemption shall have been completed as above provided, the Securities or portions of Securities of the series to be redeemed specified in such notice shall become due and payable on the date and at the place stated in such notice at the applicable redemption price, together with interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption and interest on such Securities or portions of Securities shall cease to accrue on and after the date fixed for redemption, unless the Company shall default in the payment of such redemption price and accrued interest with respect to any such Security or portion thereof. On presentation and surrender of such Securities on or after the date fixed for redemption at the place of payment specified in the notice, said Securities shall be paid and redeemed at the applicable redemption price for such series, together with interest accrued thereon to the date fixed for redemption (but if the date fixed for redemption is an Interest Payment Date, the interest installment payable on such date shall be payable to the registered Holder at the close of business on the applicable record date pursuant to Section 2.03).

(b) Upon presentation of any Security of such series that is to be redeemed in part only, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and the office or agency where the Security is presented shall deliver to the Holder thereof, at the expense of the Company, a new Security of the same series of authorized denominations in principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion of the Security so presented.

SECTION 3.04 SINKING FUND.

The provisions of Sections 3.04, 3.05 and 3.06 shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of Securities of a series, except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 2.01 for Securities of such series. The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as a "mandatory sinking fund payment," and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as an "optional sinking fund payment". If provided for by the terms of Securities of any series, the cash amount of any sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 3.05. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities of any series as provided for by the terms of Securities of such series.

SECTION 3.05 SATISFACTION OF SINKING FUND PAYMENTS WITH SECURITIES.

The Company,

(1) may deliver Outstanding Securities of a series (other than any Securities previously called for redemption) and

(2) may apply as a credit Securities of a series that have been redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Securities or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, in each case in satisfaction of all or any part of any sinking fund payment with respect to the Securities of such series required to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities as provided for by the terms of such series, provided that such Securities have not been previously so credited. Such Securities shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustee at the redemption price specified in such Securities for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly.

SECTION 3.06 REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES FOR SINKING FUND.

Not less than 45 days prior to each sinking fund payment date for any series of Securities, the Company will deliver to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing sinking fund payment for that series pursuant to the terms of the series, the portion thereof, if any, that is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting Securities of that series pursuant to Section 3.05 and the basis for such credit and will, together with such Officers' Certificate, deliver to the Trustee any Securities to be so delivered. Not less than 30 days before each such sinking fund payment date the Trustee shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 3.02 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 3.02. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Section 3.03.

ARTICLE IV COVENANTS

SECTION 4.01 PAYMENT OF PRINCIPAL, PREMIUM AND INTEREST.

The Company will duly and punctually pay or cause to be paid the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Securities of each series at the time and place and in the manner provided herein and established with respect to such Securities.

SECTION 4.02 MAINTENANCE OF OFFICE OR AGENCY.

So long as any series of the Securities remain Outstanding, the Company agrees to maintain an office or agency in [_____], with respect to each such series and at such other location or locations as may be designated as provided in this Section 4.02, where (i) Securities of that series may be presented for payment, (ii) Securities of that series may be presented as herein above authorized for registration of transfer and exchange, and (iii) notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of that series and this Indenture may be given or served, such designation to continue with respect to such office or agency until the Company shall, by written notice signed by its President or a Vice President and delivered to the Trustee, designate some other office or agency in [_____] for such purposes or any of them. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee as its agent to receive all such presentations, notices and demands.

The Company may also from time to time designate one or more other offices or agencies where the Securities of one or more series may be presented or surrendered for any or all such purposes and may from time to time rescind such designations; provided, however, that no such designation or rescission shall in any manner relieve the Company of its obligation to maintain an office or agency in [_____] for Securities of any series for such purposes. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of any such designation or rescission and of any change in the location of any such other office or agency.

SECTION 4.03 PAYING AGENTS.

(a) If the Company shall appoint one or more paying agents for all or any series of the Securities, other than the Trustee, the Company will cause each such paying agent to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section:

(1) that it will hold all sums held by it as such agent for the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of that series (whether such sums have been paid to it by the Company or by any other obligor of such Securities) in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto;

(2) that it will give the Trustee notice of any failure by the Company (or by any other obligor of such Securities) to make any payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of that series when the same shall be due and payable;

(3) that it will, at any time during the continuance of any failure referred to in the preceding paragraph (a)(2) above, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums so held in trust by such paying agent; and

(4) that it will perform all other duties of paying agent as set forth in this Indenture.

(b) If the Company shall act as its own paying agent with respect to any series of the Securities, it will on or before each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on Securities of that series, set aside, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum sufficient to pay such principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due on Securities of that series until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided and will promptly notify the Trustee of such action, or any failure (by it or any other obligor on such Securities) to take such action. Whenever the Company shall have one or more paying agents for any series of Securities, it will, prior to each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on any Securities of that series, deposit with the paying agent a sum sufficient to pay the principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due, such sum to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such principal, premium or interest, and (unless such paying agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of this action or failure so to act.

(c) Notwithstanding anything in this Section to the contrary,

(1) the agreement to hold sums in trust as provided in this Section is subject to the provisions of Section 11.05, and

(2) the Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or direct any paying agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums held in trust by the Company or such paying agent, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same terms and conditions as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such paying agent; and, upon such payment by any paying agent to the Trustee, such paying agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such money.

SECTION 4.04 APPOINTMENT TO FILL VACANCY IN OFFICE OF TRUSTEE.

The Company, whenever necessary to avoid or fill a vacancy in the office of Trustee, will appoint, in the manner provided in Section 7.11, a Trustee, so that there shall at all times be a Trustee hereunder.

SECTION 4.05 COMPLIANCE WITH CONSOLIDATION PROVISIONS.

The Company will not, while any of the Securities remain Outstanding, consolidate with or merge into any other Person, in either case where the Company is not the survivor of such transaction, or sell, convey, transfer or otherwise dispose of its property as an entirety or substantially as an entirety to any other Person unless the provisions of Article X hereof are complied with.

SECTION 4.06 STATEMENT BY OFFICERS AS TO DEFAULT.

The Company will deliver to the Trustee, within 120 days after the end of each fiscal year of the Company, an Officers' Certificate, stating whether or not to the best knowledge of the signer thereof the Company is in default in the performance and observance of any of the terms, provisions and conditions of this Indenture (without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice provided hereunder) and, if the Company shall be in default, specifying all such defaults and the nature and status thereof of which such signer may have knowledge.

ARTICLE V
SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE

SECTION 5.01 COMPANY TO FURNISH TRUSTEE NAMES AND ADDRESSES OF SECURITYHOLDERS.

The Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee:

(1) not more than 15 days after each regular record date (as defined in Section 2.03) a list, in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of the Holders of each series of Securities as of such regular record date, provided that the Company shall not be obligated to furnish or cause to furnish such list at any time that the list shall not differ in any respect from the most recent list furnished to the Trustee by the Company; and

(2) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished; provided, however, that, in either case, no such list need be furnished for any series for which the Trustee shall be the Security Registrar.

SECTION 5.02 PRESERVATION OF INFORMATION; COMMUNICATIONS WITH SECURITYHOLDERS.

(a) The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, all information as to the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities contained in the most recent list furnished to it as provided in Section 5.01 and as to the names and addresses of Holders of Securities received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar (if acting in such capacity).

(b) The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in Section 5.01 upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

(c) Securityholders may communicate as provided in Section 312(b) of the Trust Indenture Act with other Securityholders with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under the Securities.

SECTION 5.03 REPORTS BY THE COMPANY.

(a) The Company covenants and agrees to file with the Trustee, within 15 days after the Company has filed the same with the Commission, copies of the annual reports and of the information, documents and other reports (or copies of such portions of any of the foregoing as the Commission may from time to time by rules and regulations prescribe) that the Company may be required to file with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Exchange Act; or, if the Company is not required to file information, documents or reports pursuant to either of such sections, then to file with the Trustee and the Commission, in accordance with the rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission, such of the supplementary and periodic information, documents and reports that may be required pursuant to Section 13 of the Exchange Act, in respect of a security listed and registered on a national securities exchange as may be prescribed from time to time in such rules and regulations.

(b) The Company covenants and agrees to file with the Trustee and the Commission, in accordance with the rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission, such additional information, documents and reports with respect to compliance by the Company with the conditions and covenants provided for in this Indenture as may be required from time to time by such rules and regulations.

(c) The Company covenants and agrees to transmit by mail, first class postage prepaid, or reputable overnight delivery service that provides for evidence of receipt, to the Securityholders, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register, within 30 days after the filing thereof with the Trustee, such summaries of any information, documents and reports required to be filed by the Company pursuant to subsections (a) and (b) of this Section as may be required by rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission.

(d) Delivery of reports, information and documents to the Trustee under this Section 5.03 is for informational purposes only and the Trustee's receipt of the foregoing shall not constitute constructive notice of any information contained therein or determinable from information contained therein, including the Company's compliance with any of its respective covenants hereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on Officers' Certificates, except as otherwise provided herein).

SECTION 5.04 REPORTS BY THE TRUSTEE.

(a) On or before July 15 in each year in which any of the Securities are Outstanding, the Trustee shall transmit by mail, first class postage prepaid, to the Securityholders, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register, a brief report dated as of the preceding May 15, if and to the extent required under Section 313(a) of the Trust Indenture Act.

(b) The Trustee shall comply with Section 313(b) and 313(c) of the Trust Indenture Act.

(c) A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to Securityholders, be filed by the Trustee with the Company, with each stock exchange upon which any Securities are listed (if so listed) and also with the Commission. The Company agrees to notify the Trustee when any Securities become listed on any stock exchange.

ARTICLE VI REMEDIES OF THE TRUSTEE AND SECURITYHOLDERS ON EVENT OF DEFAULT

SECTION 6.01 EVENTS OF DEFAULT.

(a) Whenever used herein with respect to Securities of a particular series, "Event of Default" means any one or more of the following events that has occurred and is continuing (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether it shall be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body):

(1) the Company defaults in the payment of any installment of interest upon any of the Securities of that series, as and when the same shall become due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 90 days; provided, however, that a valid extension of an interest payment period by the Company in accordance with the terms of any indenture supplemental hereto shall not constitute a default in the payment of interest for this purpose;

(2) the Company defaults in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any of the Securities of that series as and when the same shall become due and payable whether at maturity, upon redemption, by declaration or otherwise, or in any payment required by any sinking or analogous fund established with respect to that series; provided, however, that a valid extension of the maturity of such Securities in accordance with the terms of any indenture supplemental hereto shall not constitute a default in the payment of principal or premium, if any;

(3) the Company fails to observe or perform any other of its covenants or agreements with respect to that series contained in this Indenture or otherwise established with respect to that series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof (other than a covenant or agreement that has been expressly included in this Indenture solely for the benefit of one or more series of Securities other than such series) for a period of 90 days after the date on which written notice of such failure, requiring the same to be remedied and stating that such notice is a "Notice of Default" hereunder, shall have been given to the Company by the Trustee, by registered or certified mail, or to the Company and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Securities of that series at the time Outstanding;

(4) the Company pursuant to or within the meaning of any Bankruptcy Law

(i) commences a voluntary case,

(ii) consents to the entry of an order for relief against it in an involuntary case,

- (iii) consents to the appointment of a Custodian of it or for all or substantially all of its property, or
 - (iv) makes a general assignment for the benefit of its creditors; or
- (5) a court of competent jurisdiction enters an order under any Bankruptcy Law that
- (i) is for relief against the Company in an involuntary case,
 - (ii) appoints a Custodian of the Company for all or substantially all of its property, or
 - (iii) orders the liquidation of the Company, and the order remains unstayed and in effect for 90 days.

(b) In each and every such case, unless the principal of all the Securities of that series shall have already become due and payable, either the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series then Outstanding hereunder, by notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by such Securityholders), may declare the principal of all the Securities of that series to be due and payable immediately, and upon any such declaration the same shall become and shall be immediately due and payable, notwithstanding anything contained in this Indenture or in the Securities of that series or established with respect to that series pursuant to Section 2.01 to the contrary.

(c) At any time after the principal of the Securities of that series shall have been so declared due and payable, and before any judgment or decree for the payment of the moneys due shall have been obtained or entered as hereinafter provided, the Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series then Outstanding hereunder, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if:

(1) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay all matured installments of interest upon all the Securities of that series and the principal of (and premium, if any, on) any and all Securities of that series that shall have become due otherwise than by acceleration (with interest upon such principal and premium, if any, and, to the extent that such payment is enforceable under applicable law, upon overdue installments of interest, at the rate per annum expressed in the Securities of that series to the date of such payment or deposit) and the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.07, and

(2) any and all Events of Default under the Indenture with respect to such series, other than the nonpayment of principal on Securities of that series that shall not have become due by their terms, shall have been remedied or waived as provided in Section 6.06. No such rescission and annulment shall extend to or shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

(d) In case the Trustee shall have proceeded to enforce any right with respect to Securities of that series under this Indenture and such proceedings shall have been discontinued or abandoned because of such rescission or annulment or for any other reason or shall have been determined adversely to the Trustee, then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceedings, the Company, and the Trustee shall be restored respectively to their former positions and rights hereunder, and all rights, remedies and powers of the Company and the Trustee shall continue as though no such proceedings had been taken.

SECTION 6.02 COLLECTION OF INDEBTEDNESS AND SUITS FOR ENFORCEMENT BY TRUSTEE.

(a) The Company covenants that

(1) in case it shall default in the payment of any installment of interest on any of the Securities of a series, as and when the same shall have become due and payable, and such default shall have continued for a period of 90 days, or

(2) in case it shall default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any of the Securities of a series when the same shall have become due and payable, whether upon maturity of the Securities of a series or upon redemption or upon declaration, pursuant to any sinking or analogous fund established with respect to that series or otherwise, then, upon demand of the Trustee, the Company will pay to the Trustee, for the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of that series, the whole amount that then shall have been become due and payable on all such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) or interest, or both, as the case may be, with interest upon the overdue principal (and premium, if any) and (to the extent that payment of such interest is enforceable under applicable law) upon overdue installments of interest at the rate per annum expressed in the Securities of that series; and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, and the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.07.

(b) If the Company shall fail to pay such amounts forthwith upon such demand, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, shall be entitled and empowered to institute any action or proceedings at law or in equity for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, and may prosecute any such action or proceeding to judgment or final decree, and may enforce any such judgment or final decree against the Company or other obligor upon the Securities of that series and collect the moneys adjudged or decreed to be payable in the manner provided by law out of the property of the Company or other obligor upon the Securities of that series, wherever situated.

(c) In case of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation, bankruptcy, reorganization, readjustment, arrangement, composition or judicial proceedings affecting the Company, or its creditors or property, the Trustee shall have power to intervene in such proceedings and take any action therein that may be permitted by the court and shall (except as may be otherwise provided by law) be entitled to file such proofs of claim and other papers and documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee and of the Holders of Securities of such series allowed for the entire amount due and payable by the Company under the Indenture at the date of institution of such proceedings and for any additional amount that may become due and payable by the Company after such date, and to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claim, and to distribute the same after the deduction of the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.07; and any receiver, assignee or trustee in bankruptcy or reorganization is hereby authorized by each of the Holders of Securities of such series to make such payments to the Trustee, and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to such Securityholders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due it under Section 7.07.

(d) All rights of action and of asserting claims under this Indenture, or under any of the terms established with respect to Securities of that series, may be enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of such Securities, or the production thereof at any trial or other proceeding relative thereto, and any such suit or proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for payment to the Trustee of any amounts due under Section 7.07, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities of such series. In case of an Event of Default hereunder, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce the rights vested in it by this Indenture by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any of such rights, either at law or in equity or in bankruptcy or otherwise, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement contained in the Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted in this Indenture, or to enforce any other legal or equitable right vested in the Trustee by this Indenture or by law. Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Securityholder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities of that series or the rights of any Holder thereof or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Securityholder in any such proceeding.

SECTION 6.03 APPLICATION OF MONEYS COLLECTED.

Any moneys collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article with respect to a particular series of Securities and any money or other property distributable in respect of the company's obligations under this Indenture after an Event of Default shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such moneys on account of principal (or premium, if any) or interest, upon presentation of the Securities of that series, and notation thereon of the payment, if only partially paid, and upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

FIRST: To the payment of costs and expenses of collection and of all amounts payable to the Trustee (including any predecessor Trustee) under Section 7.07; and

SECOND: To the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid upon Securities of such series for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, respectively.

SECTION 6.04 LIMITATION ON SUITS.

No Holder of any Security of any series shall have any right by virtue or by availing of any provision of this Indenture to institute any suit, action or proceeding in equity or at law upon or under or with respect to this Indenture or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless

(1) such Holder previously shall have given to the Trustee written notice of an Event of Default and of the continuance thereof with respect to the Securities of such series specifying such Event of Default, as hereinbefore provided;

(2) the Holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series then Outstanding shall have made written request upon the Trustee to institute such action, suit or proceeding in its own name as trustee hereunder;

(3) such Holder or Holders shall have offered to the Trustee such reasonable indemnity as it may require against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred therein or thereby; and

(4) the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity, shall have failed to institute any such action, suit or proceeding and

(5) during such 60 day period, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Securities of that series do not give the Trustee a direction inconsistent with the request.

Notwithstanding anything contained herein to the contrary, the right of any Holder of any Security to receive payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on such Security, as therein provided, on the respective due dates expressed in such Security (or in the case of redemption, on the redemption date), or to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after such respective dates or redemption date, shall not be impaired or affected without the consent of such Holder and by accepting a Security hereunder it is expressly understood, intended and covenanted by the taker and Holder of every Security of such series with every other such taker and Holder and the Trustee, that no one or more Holders of Securities of such series shall have any right in any manner whatsoever by virtue or by availing of any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of the Holders of any other of such Securities, or to obtain or seek to obtain priority over or preference to any other such Holder, or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal, ratable and common benefit of all Holders of Securities of such series. For the protection and enforcement of the provisions of this Section, each and every Securityholder and the Trustee shall be entitled to such relief as can be given either at law or in equity.

SECTION 6.05 RIGHTS AND REMEDIES CUMULATIVE; DELAY OR OMISSION NOT WAIVER.

(a) Except as otherwise provided in Section 2.07, all powers and remedies given by this Article to the Trustee or to the Securityholders shall, to the extent permitted by law, be deemed cumulative and not exclusive of any other powers and remedies available to the Trustee or the Holders of the Securities, by judicial proceedings or otherwise, to enforce the performance or observance of the covenants and agreements contained in this Indenture or otherwise established with respect to such Securities.

(b) No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Holder of any of the Securities to exercise any right or power accruing upon any Event of Default occurring and continuing as aforesaid shall impair any such right or power, or shall be construed to be a waiver of any such default or on acquiescence therein; and, subject to the provisions of Section 6.04, every power and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or the Securityholders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as shall be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Securityholders.

SECTION 6.06 CONTROL BY SECURITYHOLDERS.

The Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding, determined in accordance with Section 8.01, shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee with respect to such series; provided, however, that such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture or be unduly prejudicial to the rights of Holders of Securities of any other series at the time Outstanding determined in accordance with Section 8.01. Subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, the Trustee shall have the right to decline to follow any such direction if the Trustee in good faith shall, by a Responsible Officer or Officers of the Trustee, determine that the proceeding so directed would involve the Trustee in personal liability. The Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding affected thereby, determined in accordance with Section 8.01, may on behalf of the holders of all of the Securities of such series waive any past default in the performance of any of the covenants contained herein or established pursuant to Section 2.01 with respect to such series and its consequences, except a default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on, any of the Securities of that series as and when the same shall become due by the terms of such Securities otherwise than by acceleration (unless such default has been cured and a sum sufficient to pay all matured installments of interest and principal and any premium has been deposited with the Trustee (in accordance with Section 6.01(c)) or in respect of a covenant or provision hereof which under Article IX cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected. Upon any such waiver, the default covered thereby shall be deemed to be cured for all purposes of this Indenture and the Company, the Trustee and the Holders of the Securities of such series shall be restored to their former positions and rights hereunder, respectively; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any right consequent thereon.

SECTION 6.07 UNDERTAKING TO PAY COSTS.

All parties to this Indenture agree, and each Holder of any Securities by such Holder's acceptance thereof shall be deemed to have agreed, that any court may in its discretion require, in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken or omitted by it as Trustee, the filing by any party litigant in such suit of an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and that such court may in its discretion assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees, against any party litigant in such suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by such party litigant; but the provisions of this Section shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Trustee, to any suit instituted by any Securityholder, or group of Securityholders, holding more than 10% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, or to any suit instituted by any Securityholder for the enforcement of the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security of such series, on or after the respective due dates expressed in such Security or established pursuant to this Indenture.

ARTICLE VII CONCERNING THE TRUSTEE

SECTION 7.01 CERTAIN DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF TRUSTEE.

(a) The Trustee, prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series and after the curing of all Events of Default with respect to the Securities of that series that may have occurred, shall undertake to perform with respect to the Securities of such series such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee. In case an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series has occurred (that has not been cured or waived), the Trustee shall exercise with respect to Securities of that series such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent man would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his own affairs.

(b) No provision of this Indenture shall be construed to relieve the Trustee from liability for its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act, or its own willful misconduct, except that:

(1) prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series and after the curing or waiving of all such Events of Default with respect to that series that may have occurred: the duties and obligations of the Trustee shall with respect to the Securities of such series be determined solely by the express provisions of this Indenture, and the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to the Securities of such series except for the performance of such duties and obligations as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and in the absence of bad faith on the part of the Trustee, the Trustee may with respect to the Securities of such series conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon any certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; but in the case of any such certificates or opinions that by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform to the requirement of this Indenture;

(2) the Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer or Responsible Officers of the Trustee, unless it shall be proved that the Trustee, was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts;

(3) the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith in accordance with the direction of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee under this Indenture with respect to the Securities of that series; and

(4) this Subsection shall not be construed to limit the effect of Subsection (c) of this Section 7.01.

(c) None of the provisions contained in this Indenture shall require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur any financial liability in the performance of any of its duties hereunder, or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers, it shall have reasonable grounds for believing that repayment of such funds or adequate indemnity against such risk or liability is not reasonably assured to it.

(d) The Trustee shall not be deemed to have notice of or be charged with having knowledge of any Default or Event of Default with respect to any series of Securities, except Events of Default under Section 6.01(a)(1) or (a)(2), if and so long as it is acting as paying agent with respect to the Securities of such series, unless written notice of such Default Event or Event of Default, as the case may be, is received by the Trustee at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee from the Company or any Holder of Securities of such series, and such notice references the Securities and this Indenture.

(e) Whether or not expressly so provided, every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct or affecting the liability of or affording protection to the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of this Section 7.01.

SECTION 7.02 NOTICE OF DEFAULTS.

If a Default occurs hereunder with respect to Securities of any series and is known to a Responsible Officer of the Trustee, the Trustee shall give the Holders of Securities of such series notice of such Default as and to the extent provided by the Trust Indenture Act; provided, however, that in the case of any Default of the character specified in clause (3) of Section 6.01(a) with respect to Securities of such series, no such notice to Holders shall be given until at least 30 days after the occurrence thereof.

SECTION 7.03 CERTAIN RIGHTS OF TRUSTEE.

Except as otherwise provided in Section 7.01:

(a) The Trustee may conclusively rely and shall be fully protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, consent, order, approval, bond, security or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;

(b) Any request, direction, order or demand of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution or an instrument signed in the name of the Company, by the President or any Vice President and by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary or the Treasurer or an Assistant Treasurer thereof (unless other evidence in respect thereof is specifically prescribed herein);

(c) The Trustee may consult with counsel and the advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken or suffered or omitted hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon;

(d) The Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request, order or direction of any of the Securityholders, pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture, unless such Securityholders shall have offered to the Trustee reasonable security or indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities that may be incurred therein or thereby; nothing contained herein shall, however, relieve the Trustee of the obligation, upon the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to a series of the Securities (that has not been cured or waived) to exercise with respect to Securities of that series such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and to use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent man would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his own affairs;

(e) The Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith and believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion or rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture;

(f) The Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, consent, order, approval, bond, security, or other papers or documents; and

(g) The Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder.

(h) whenever in the administration of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking, suffering or omitting any action hereunder, the Trustee (unless other evidence be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of bad faith on its part, conclusively rely upon an Officers' Certificate;

(i) the rights, privileges, protections, immunities and benefits given to the Trustee, including, without limitation, its right to be indemnified, are extended to, and shall be enforceable by, the Trustee in each of its capacities hereunder, and each agent, custodian and other Person employed to act hereunder;

(j) the Trustee may request that the Company deliver an Officers' Certificate setting forth the names of individuals and/or titles of officers authorized at such time to take specified actions pursuant to this Indenture;

(k) the permissive right of the Trustee to take or refrain from taking any actions enumerated in this Indenture shall not be construed as a duty;

(l) anything in this Indenture notwithstanding, in no event shall the Trustee be liable for special, indirect, punitive or consequential loss or damage of any kind whatsoever (including but not limited to loss of profit), even if the Company or Guarantor has been advised as to the likelihood of such loss or damage and regardless of the form of action;

(m) the Trustee shall not be responsible or liable for any failure or delay in the performance of its obligations under this Indenture arising out of or caused, directly or indirectly, by circumstances beyond its reasonable control, including, without limitation, acts of God; earthquakes; fire; flood; terrorism; wars and other military disturbances; sabotage; epidemics; riots; interruptions; loss or malfunctions of utilities, computer (hardware or software) or communication services; accidents; labor disputes; acts of civil or military authority and governmental action.

SECTION 7.04 TRUSTEE NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR RECITALS OR ISSUANCE OR SECURITIES.

(a) The recitals contained herein and in the Securities shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and the Trustee assumes no responsibility for the correctness of the same.

(b) The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities.

(c) The Trustee shall not be accountable for the use or application by the Company of any of the Securities or of the proceeds of such Securities, or for the use or application of any moneys paid over by the Trustee in accordance with any provision of this Indenture or established pursuant to Section 2.01, or for the use or application of any moneys received by any paying agent other than the Trustee.

SECTION 7.05 MAY HOLD SECURITIES.

The Trustee or any paying agent or Security Registrar, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee, paying agent or Security Registrar.

SECTION 7.06 MONEYS HELD IN TRUST.

Subject to the provisions of Section 11.05, all moneys received by the Trustee shall, until used or applied as herein provided, be held in trust for the purposes for which they were received, but need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest on any moneys received by it hereunder except such as it may agree with the Company to pay thereon.

SECTION 7.07 COMPENSATION AND REIMBURSEMENT.

(a) The Company covenants and agrees to pay to the Trustee, and the Trustee shall be entitled to, such reasonable compensation (which shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust), as the Company, and the Trustee may from time to time agree in writing, for all services rendered by it in the execution of the trusts hereby created and in the exercise and performance of any of the powers and duties hereunder of the Trustee, and, except as otherwise expressly provided herein, the Company will pay or reimburse the Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee in accordance with any of the provisions of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its counsel and of all Persons not regularly in its employ) except any such expense, disbursement or advance as may arise from its gross negligence or willful misconduct. The Company also covenants to indemnify the Trustee (and its officers, agents, directors and employees) for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, damage, claims liability or expense incurred without gross negligence or willful misconduct on the part of the Trustee and arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of this trust, including the costs and expenses of defending itself against any claim whether asserted by the Company, any Securityholder or any other Person or liability including the compensation and expense of counsel in connection with the exercise or performance of any of its powers or duties hereunder.

(b) The obligations of the Company under this Section to compensate and indemnify the Trustee and to pay or reimburse the Trustee for expenses, disbursements and advances shall constitute additional indebtedness hereunder. Such additional indebtedness shall be secured by a lien prior to that of the Securities upon all property and funds held or collected by the Trustee as such, except funds held in trust for the benefit of the Holders of particular Securities.

(c) To the extent permitted by law, any compensation due or expense incurred by the Trustee after a default specified in or pursuant to Section 6.01 is intended to constitute an expense of administration under any then applicable bankruptcy or insolvency law. "Trustee" for purposes of this Section 7.07 shall include any predecessor Trustee but the negligence or bad faith of any Trustee shall not affect the rights of any other Trustee under this Section 7.07.

(d) The provisions of this Section 7.07 shall survive the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, the termination of this Indenture for any reason, or the earlier resignation or removal of the Trustee and shall apply with equal force and effect to the Trustee in its capacity as Authenticating Agent, Security Registrar or paying agent.

SECTION 7.08 RELIANCE ON OFFICERS' CERTIFICATE.

Except as otherwise provided in Section 7.01, whenever in the administration of the provisions of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it necessary or desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking or suffering or omitting to take any action hereunder, such matter (unless other evidence in respect thereof be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee, be deemed to be conclusively proved and established by an Officers' Certificate delivered to the Trustee and such certificate, in the absence of negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee, shall be full warranty to the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted to be taken by it under the provisions of this Indenture upon the faith thereof.

SECTION 7.09 DISQUALIFICATION; CONFLICTING INTERESTS.

If the Trustee has or shall acquire any “conflicting interest” within the meaning of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee and the Company shall in all respects comply with the provisions of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act, subject to the penultimate paragraph thereof. For purposes of Section 310(b)(i) of the Trust Indenture Act and to the extent permitted thereby, the Trustee, in its capacity as trustee in respect of the Securities of any series, shall not be deemed to have a conflicting interest arising from its capacity as trustee in respect of the Securities of any other series.

SECTION 7.10 CORPORATE TRUSTEE REQUIRED; ELIGIBILITY.

There shall at all times be a Trustee with respect to the Securities issued hereunder which shall at all times be a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America or any State or Territory thereof or of the District of Columbia, or a corporation or other Person permitted to act as trustee by the Commission, authorized under such laws to exercise corporate trust powers, having a combined capital and surplus of at least fifty million U.S. dollars (\$50,000,000), and subject to supervision or examination by federal, state, territorial, or District of Columbia authority. If such corporation publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of the aforesaid supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such corporation shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. The Company may not, nor may any Person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with the Company, serve as Trustee. In case at any time the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in Section 7.11.

SECTION 7.11 RESIGNATION AND REMOVAL; APPOINTMENT OF SUCCESSOR.

(a) The Trustee or any successor hereafter appointed, may at any time resign with respect to the Securities of one or more series by giving written notice thereof to the Company and by transmitting notice of resignation by mail, first class postage prepaid, to the Securityholders of such series, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. Upon receiving such notice of resignation, the Company shall promptly appoint a successor trustee with respect to Securities of such series by written instrument, in duplicate, executed by order of the Board of Directors, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the resigning Trustee and one copy to the successor trustee. If no successor trustee shall have been so appointed and have accepted appointment within 30 days after the mailing of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor trustee with respect to Securities of such series, or any Securityholder of that series who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months may on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any such court for the appointment of a successor trustee. Such court may thereupon after such notice, if any, as it may deem proper and prescribe, appoint a successor trustee.

(b) In case at any time any one of the following shall occur:

(1) the Trustee shall fail to comply with the provisions of Section 7.09 after written request therefor by the Company or by any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months; or

(2) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of Section 7.10 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any such Securityholder; or

(3) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting, or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent, or commence a voluntary bankruptcy proceeding, or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or consented to, or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation,

then, in any such case, the Company may remove the Trustee with respect to all Securities and appoint a successor trustee by written instrument, in duplicate, executed by order of the Board of Directors, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the Trustee so removed and one copy to the successor trustee, or, unless, in the case of a failure to comply with Section 7.09, the Trustee's duty to resign is stayed as provided in the penultimate paragraph of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act, any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months may, on behalf of that Holder and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee and the appointment of a successor trustee. Such court may thereupon after such notice, if any, as it may deem proper and prescribe, remove the Trustee and appoint a successor trustee.

(c) The Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding may at any time remove the Trustee with respect to such series by so notifying the Trustee and the Company and may appoint a successor Trustee for such series with the consent of the Company.

(d) Any resignation or removal of the Trustee and appointment of a successor trustee with respect to the Securities of a series pursuant to any of the provisions of this Section shall become effective upon acceptance of appointment by the successor trustee as provided in Section 7.12.

(e) Any successor trustee appointed pursuant to this Section may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more series or all of such series, and at any time there shall be only one Trustee with respect to the Securities of any particular series.

SECTION 7.12 ACCEPTANCE OF APPOINTMENT BY SUCCESSOR.

(a) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor trustee with respect to all Securities, every such successor trustee so appointed shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee; but, on the request of the Company or the successor trustee, such retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor trustee all the rights, powers, and trusts of the retiring Trustee and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder, subject nevertheless to the lien provided for in Section 7.07.

(b) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and each successor trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor trustee shall accept such appointment and which

(1) shall contain such provisions as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm to, and to vest in, each successor trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates,

(2) shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee, and

(3) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust, that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee and that no Trustee shall be responsible for any act or failure to act on the part of any other Trustee hereunder; and upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein, such retiring Trustee shall with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates have no further responsibility for the exercise of rights and powers or for the performance of the duties and obligations vested in the Trustee under this Indenture, and each such successor trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or any successor trustee, such retiring Trustee shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor trustee, to the extent contemplated by such supplemental indenture, the property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates, subject nevertheless to the lien provided for in Section 7.07.

(c) Upon request of any such successor trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor trustee all such rights, powers and trusts referred to in paragraph (a) or (b) of this Section, as the case may be.

(d) No successor trustee shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor trustee shall be qualified and eligible under this Article.

(e) Upon acceptance of appointment by a successor trustee as provided in this Section, the Company shall transmit notice of the succession of such trustee hereunder by mail, first class postage prepaid, to the Securityholders, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. If the Company fails to transmit such notice within ten days after acceptance of appointment by the successor trustee, the successor trustee shall cause such notice to be transmitted at the expense of the Company.

SECTION 7.13 MERGER, CONVERSION, CONSOLIDATION OR SUCCESSION TO BUSINESS.

Any Person into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any Person resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any Person succeeding to all or substantially all of the corporate trust business of the Trustee, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided that such Person shall be qualified under the provisions of Section 7.09 and eligible under the provisions of Section 7.10, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto, anything herein to the contrary notwithstanding. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by the Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities.

SECTION 7.14 PREFERENTIAL COLLECTION OF CLAIMS AGAINST THE COMPANY.

The Trustee shall comply with Section 311(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, excluding any creditor relationship described in Section 311(b) of the Trust Indenture Act. A Trustee who has resigned or been removed shall be subject to Section 311(a) of the Trust Indenture Act to the extent included therein.

ARTICLE VIII CONCERNING THE SECURITYHOLDERS

SECTION 8.01 EVIDENCE OF ACTION BY SECURITYHOLDERS.

Whenever in this Indenture it is provided that the Holders of a majority or specified percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series may take any action (including the making of any demand or request, the giving of any notice, consent or waiver or the taking of any other action), the fact that at the time of taking any such action the Holders of such majority or specified percentage of that series have joined therein may be evidenced by any instrument or any number of instruments of similar tenor executed by such Holders of Securities of that series in Person or by agent or proxy appointed in writing. If the Company shall solicit from the Securityholders of any series any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, the Company may, at its option, as evidenced by an Officers' Certificate, fix in advance a record date for such series for the determination of Securityholders entitled to give such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, but the Company shall have no obligation to do so. If such a record date is fixed, such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action may be given before or after the record date, but only the Securityholders of record at the close of business on the record date shall be deemed to be Securityholders for the purposes of determining whether Securityholders of the requisite proportion of Outstanding Securities of that series have authorized or agreed or consented to such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, and for that purpose the Outstanding Securities of that series shall be computed as of the record date; provided, however, that no such authorization, agreement or consent by such Securityholders on the record date shall be deemed effective unless it shall become effective pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture not later than six months after the record date.

SECTION 8.02 PROOF OF EXECUTION BY SECURITYHOLDERS.

Subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, proof of the execution of any instrument by a Securityholder (such proof will not require notarization) or his agent or proxy and proof of the holding by any Person of any of the Securities shall be sufficient if made in the following manner:

- (1) The fact and date of the execution by any such Person of any instrument may be proved in any reasonable manner acceptable to the Trustee.
- (2) The ownership of Securities shall be proved by the Security Register of such Securities or by a certificate of the Security Registrar thereof.
- (3) The Trustee may require such additional proof of any matter referred to in this Section as it shall deem necessary.

SECTION 8.03 WHO MAY BE DEEMED OWNERS.

Prior to the due presentment for registration of transfer of any Security, the Company, the Trustee, any paying agent and any Security Registrar may deem and treat the Person in whose name such Security shall be registered upon the books of the Company as the absolute owner of such Security (whether or not such Security shall be overdue and notwithstanding any notice of ownership or writing thereon made by anyone other than the Security Registrar) for the purpose of receiving payment of or on account of the principal of (and premium, if any) and (subject to Section 2.03) interest on such Security and for all other purposes; and neither the Company nor the Trustee nor any paying agent nor any Security Registrar shall be affected by any notice to the contrary.

SECTION 8.04 CERTAIN SECURITIES OWNED BY COMPANY DISREGARDED.

In determining whether the Holders of the requisite aggregate principal amount of Securities of a particular series have concurred in any direction, consent or waiver under this Indenture, the Securities of that series that are owned by the Company or any other obligor on the Securities of that series or by any Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under common control with the Company or any other obligor on the Securities of that series shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding for the purpose of any such determination, except that for the purpose of determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying on any such direction, consent or waiver, only Securities of such series that a Responsible Officer of the Trustee actually knows are so owned shall be so disregarded. The Securities so owned that have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding for the purposes of this Section, if the pledgee shall establish to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not a Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with the Company or any such other obligor. In case of a dispute as to such right, any decision by the Trustee taken upon the advice of counsel shall be full protection to the Trustee.

SECTION 8.05 ACTIONS BINDING ON FUTURE SECURITYHOLDERS.

At any time prior to (but not after) the evidencing to the Trustee, as provided in Section 8.01, of the taking of any action by the Holders of the majority or percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series specified in this Indenture in connection with such action, any Holder of a Security of that series that is shown by the evidence to be included in the Securities the Holders of which have consented to such action may, by filing written notice with the Trustee, and upon proof of holding as provided in Section 8.02, revoke such action so far as concerns such Security. Except as aforesaid any such action taken by the Holder of any Security shall be conclusive and binding upon such Holder and upon all future Holders and owners of such Security, and of any Security issued in exchange therefor, on registration of transfer thereof or in place thereof, irrespective of whether or not any notation in regard thereto is made upon such Security. Any action taken by the Holders of the majority or percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series specified in this Indenture in connection with such action shall be conclusively binding upon the Company, the Trustee and the Holders of all the Securities of that series.

**ARTICLE IX
SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES**

SECTION 9.01 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITHOUT THE CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS.

In addition to any supplemental indenture otherwise authorized by this Indenture, the Company and the Trustee may from time to time and at any time enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto (which shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act as then in effect), without the consent of the Securityholders, for one or more of the following purposes:

- (1) to cure any ambiguity, defect, or inconsistency herein, in the Securities of any series;
- (2) to comply with Article X;
- (3) to provide for uncertificated Securities in addition to or in place of certificated Securities;
- (4) to add to the covenants of the Company for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such covenants are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such covenants are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series) or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company or to add any additional Events of Default for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such additional Events of Default are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such additional Events of Default are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series);
- (5) to add to, delete from, or revise the conditions, limitations, and restrictions on the authorized amount, terms, or purposes of issue, authentication, and delivery of Securities (prior to the issuance thereof), as herein set forth;
- (6) to make any change that does not adversely affect the rights of any Securityholder in any material respect;
- (7) to provide for the issuance of and establish the form and terms and conditions of the Securities of any series as provided in Section 2.01, to establish the form of any certifications required to be furnished pursuant to the terms of this Indenture or any series of Securities, or to add to the rights of the Holders of any series of Securities; or
- (8) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, pursuant to the requirements of Section 7.12.

The Trustee is hereby authorized to join with the Company in the execution of any such supplemental indenture, and to make any further appropriate agreements and stipulations that may be therein contained, but the Trustee shall not be obligated to enter into any such supplemental indenture that affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

Any supplemental indenture authorized by the provisions of this Section may be executed by the Company and the Trustee without the consent of the Holders of any of the Securities at the time Outstanding, notwithstanding any of the provisions of Section 9.02.

SECTION 9.02 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITH CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS.

With the consent (evidenced as provided in Section 8.01) of the Holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of each series affected by such supplemental indenture or indentures at the time Outstanding, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee may from time to time and at any time enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto (which shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act as then in effect) for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of any supplemental indenture or of modifying in any manner not covered by Section 9.01 the rights of the Holders of the Securities of such series under this Indenture; provided, however, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the Holders of each Security then Outstanding and affected thereby:

(1) change the maturity of the principal of, or any installment of principal of or interest on, any Security, or reduce the principal amount thereof or the rate of interest thereon or any premium payable upon the redemption thereof, or reduce the amount of the principal of an Original Issue Discount Security or any other Security which would be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.01 or change the coin or currency in which any Security or any premium or interest thereon is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after the maturity thereof (or, in the case of redemption, on or after the redemption date), or

(2) reduce the percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, the consent of whose Holders is required for any such supplemental indenture, or the consent of whose Holders is required for any waiver of certain defaults hereunder and their consequences provided for in this Indenture, or

(3) modify any of the provisions of this Section or Section 6.06 relating to waivers of default, except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby; provided, however, that this clause shall not be deemed to require the consent of any Holder with respect to changes in the references to “the Trustee” and concomitant changes in this Section, or the deletion of this proviso, in accordance with the requirements of Sections 7.12 and 9.01(8).

A supplemental indenture which changes or eliminates any covenant or other provision of this Indenture which has expressly been included solely for the benefit of one or more particular series of Securities, or which modifies the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series with respect to such covenant or other provision, shall be deemed not to affect the rights under this Indenture of the Holders of Securities of any other series. It shall not be necessary for the consent of the Securityholders of any series affected thereby under this Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such consent shall approve the substance thereof.

SECTION 9.03 EFFECT OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES.

Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Article or of Section 10.01, this Indenture shall, with respect to such series, be and be deemed to be modified and amended in accordance therewith and the respective rights, limitations of rights, obligations, duties and immunities under this Indenture of the Trustee, the Company and the Holders of Securities of the series affected thereby shall thereafter be determined, exercised and enforced hereunder subject in all respects to such modifications and amendments, and all the terms and conditions of any such supplemental indenture shall be and be deemed to be part of the terms and conditions of this Indenture for any and all purposes.

SECTION 9.04 SECURITIES AFFECTED BY SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES.

Securities of any series, affected by a supplemental indenture, authenticated and delivered after the execution of such supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Article or of Section 10.01, may bear a notation in form approved by the Company, provided such form meets the requirements of any exchange upon which such series may be listed, as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of that series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Board of Directors of the Company, to any modification of this Indenture contained in any such supplemental indenture may be prepared by the Company, authenticated by the Trustee and delivered in exchange for the Securities of that series then Outstanding.

SECTION 9.05 EXECUTION OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES.

Upon the request of the Company, accompanied by its Board Resolutions authorizing the execution of any supplemental indenture, and upon the filing with the Trustee of evidence of any requisite consents of Securityholders required to consent thereto as aforesaid, the Trustee shall join with the Company in the execution of such supplemental indenture unless such supplemental indenture affects the Trustee’s own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise, in which case the Trustee may in its discretion but shall not be obligated to enter into such supplemental indenture. The Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, shall be entitled to receive an Opinion of Counsel as conclusive evidence that any supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article is authorized or permitted by, and conforms to, the terms of this Article and that it is proper for the Trustee under the provisions of this Article to join in the execution thereof.

Promptly after the execution by the Company and the Trustee of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Section, the Company shall transmit by mail, first class postage prepaid, a notice, setting forth in general terms the substance of such supplemental indenture, to the Securityholders of all series affected thereby as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. Any failure of the Company to mail such notice, or any defect therein, shall not, however, in any way impair or affect the validity of any such supplemental indenture.

ARTICLE X SUCCESSOR ENTITY

SECTION 10.01 COMPANY MAY CONSOLIDATE, ETC.

Nothing contained in this Indenture or in any of the Securities shall prevent any consolidation or merger of the Company with or into any other Person (whether or not affiliated with the Company) or successive consolidations or mergers in which the Company or its successor or successors shall be a party or parties, or shall prevent any sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition of the property of the Company or its successor or successors as an entirety, or substantially as an entirety, to any other Person (whether or not affiliated with the Company or its successor or successors) authorized to acquire and operate the same; provided, however, the Company hereby covenants and agrees that, upon any such consolidation or merger (in each case, if the Company is not the survivor of such transaction), sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition, the due and punctual payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on all of the Securities of all series in accordance with the terms of each series, according to their tenor and the due and punctual performance and observance of all the covenants and conditions of this Indenture or established with respect to each series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 to be kept or performed by the Company shall be expressly assumed, by supplemental indenture (which shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act, as then in effect) satisfactory in form to the Trustee executed and delivered to the Trustee by the entity formed by such consolidation, or into which the Company shall have been merged, or by the entity which shall have acquired such property.

SECTION 10.02 SUCCESSOR ENTITY SUBSTITUTED.

(a) In case of any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition and upon the assumption by any successor entity by supplemental indenture, executed and delivered to the Trustee of the due and punctual payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on all of the Securities of all series Outstanding and the due and punctual performance of all of the covenants and conditions of this Indenture or established with respect to each series of the Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 to be performed by the Company, such successor entity shall succeed to and be substituted for the Company with the same effect as if it had been named as the Company herein, and thereupon the predecessor corporation, except in the case of a lease, shall be relieved of all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities.

(b) In case of any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition such changes in phraseology and form (but not in substance) may be made in the Securities thereafter to be issued as may be appropriate.

(c) Nothing contained in this Article shall require any action by the Company in the case of a consolidation or merger of any Person into the Company where the Company is the survivor of such transaction, or the acquisition by the Company, by purchase or otherwise, of all or any part of the property of any other Person (whether or not affiliated with the Company).

SECTION 10.03 EVIDENCE OF CONSOLIDATION, ETC. TO TRUSTEE.

The Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, shall be entitled to receive an Opinion of Counsel and an Officers' Certificate as conclusive evidence that any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition, and any such assumption, comply with the provisions of this Article.

ARTICLE XI
SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE; DEFEASANCE

SECTION 11.01 SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE.

This Indenture will be discharged and will cease to be of further effect with respect to a series of Securities (except as to any surviving rights of registration of transfer or exchange of such series of Securities herein expressly provided for), and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to such series, when:

(1) either (A) all Securities of that series theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than (i) any Securities that shall have been destroyed, lost or stolen and that shall have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 2.07 and (ii) Securities for whose payment money or noncallable Governmental Obligations have theretofore been deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereafter repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in Section 11.05) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or (B) all Securities of such series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation (i) have become due and payable, or (ii) will by their terms become due and payable within one year, or (iii) are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption, and the Company shall deposit or cause to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust for the purpose (x) moneys in an amount, or (y) noncallable Governmental Obligations the scheduled principal of and interest on which in accordance with their terms will provide, not later than the due date of any payment, money in an amount, or (z) a combination thereof, sufficient, in the case of (y) or (z), in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay and discharge, at maturity or upon redemption, all Securities of that series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, including principal (and premium, if any) and interest due or to become due to such date of maturity or date fixed for redemption, as the case may be;

(2) the Company has paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable hereunder with respect to such series by the Company; and

(3) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all the conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to such series of Securities have been complied with. Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to a series of Securities, the obligations of the Trustee under Section 7.07 and, if money shall have been deposited with the Trustee pursuant to subclause (y) of clause (1) of this Section, the obligations of the Trustee under Sections 11.03 and 11.05 shall survive.

SECTION 11.02 DEFEASANCE.

The Company may, at its option and at any time (including notwithstanding the exercise by the Company of a Covenant Defeasance (as defined herein)), elect to have its obligations discharged with respect to a series of the Securities ("Legal Defeasance"). Such Legal Defeasance means that the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by such series of Securities, except for (a) the rights of Holders to receive payments in respect of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Securities when such payments are due solely from the trust fund described in this Section, (b) the Company's obligations with respect to such series of Securities concerning issuing temporary Securities, registration of transfer or exchange of such series of Securities, mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities of such series and the maintenance of an office or agency for payments, (c) the rights, powers, trust, duties and immunities of the Trustee and the Company's obligations in connection therewith and (d) the Legal Defeasance provisions of this Indenture. In addition, the Company may, at its option and at any time, elect to have the obligations of the Company released with respect to covenants provided with respect to such series of Securities under Section 2.01(15), 9.01(4) and 9.01(7) of this Indenture ("Covenant Defeasance") and thereafter any omission to comply with such obligations shall not constitute a Default or Event of Default with respect to such series of Securities. In the event of Covenant Defeasance, those events described under Section 6.01(a) with respect to the foregoing covenants will no longer constitute an Event of Default with respect to such series of Securities.

In order to exercise either Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance:

(1) the Company must irrevocably deposit with the Trustee, in trust, for the benefit of the Holders of such series, (A) moneys in an amount, or (B) noncallable Governmental Obligations the scheduled principal of and interest on which in accordance with their terms will provide, not later than the due date of any payment, money in an amount, or (C) a combination thereof, sufficient, in the case of (B) or (C), in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay and discharge, at maturity or upon redemption, the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on such series of Securities on the stated date for payment thereof or on the applicable redemption date, as the case may be;

(2) in the case of Legal Defeasance, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel confirming that (A) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling or (B) since the date of this Indenture, there has been a change in the applicable federal income tax law, in either case to the effect that, and based thereon such Opinion of Counsel shall confirm that, the Holders of such series of Securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such Legal Defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such Legal Defeasance had not occurred;

(3) in the case of Covenant Defeasance, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel confirming that the Holders of such series of Securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such Covenant Defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such Covenant Defeasance had not occurred;

(4) no Default or Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit or insofar as Events of Default under clauses (4) and (5) of Section 6.01(a) with respect to the Securities of such series are concerned, at any time in the period ending on the 91st day after the date of deposit;

(5) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent provided for or relating to the Legal Defeasance or the Covenant Defeasance, as the case may be, have been complied with; and

(6) if such series of Securities are to be redeemed prior to final maturity (other than from mandatory sinking fund payments or analogous payments), notice of such redemption shall have been duly given pursuant to this Indenture or provision therefor satisfactory to the Trustee shall have been made.

SECTION 11.03 DEPOSITED MONEYS TO BE HELD IN TRUST.

All moneys or Governmental Obligations deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Sections 11.01 or 11.02 shall be held in trust and shall be available for payment as due, either directly or through any paying agent (including the Company acting as its own paying agent), to the Holders of the particular series of Securities for the payment or redemption of which such moneys or Governmental Obligations have been deposited with the Trustee.

SECTION 11.04 PAYMENT OF MONEYS HELD BY PAYING AGENTS.

In connection with the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture all moneys or Governmental Obligations then held by any paying agent under the provisions of this Indenture shall, upon demand of the Company, be paid to the Trustee and thereupon such paying agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such moneys or Governmental Obligations.

SECTION 11.05 REPAYMENT TO COMPANY.

Any moneys or Governmental Obligations deposited with any paying agent or the Trustee, or then held by the Company, in trust for payment of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of a particular series that are not applied but remain unclaimed by the Holders of such Securities for at least two years after the date upon which the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on such Securities shall have respectively become due and payable, shall be repaid to the Company on May 31 of each year or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and thereupon the paying agent and the Trustee shall be released from all further liability with respect to such moneys or Governmental Obligations, and the Holder of any of the Securities entitled to receive such payment shall thereafter, as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Company for the payment thereof.

ARTICLE XII
IMMUNITY OF INCORPORATORS, STOCKHOLDERS, OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS

SECTION 12.01 NO RECOURSE.

No recourse under or upon any obligation, covenant or agreement of this Indenture, or of any Security, or for any claim based thereon or otherwise in respect thereof, shall be had against any incorporator, stockholder, officer or director, past, present or future as such, of the Company or of any predecessor or successor corporation, either directly or through the Company or any such predecessor or successor corporation, whether by virtue of any constitution, statute or rule of law, or by the enforcement of any assessment or penalty or otherwise; it being expressly understood that this Indenture and the obligations issued hereunder are solely corporate obligations, and that no such personal liability whatever shall attach to, or is or shall be incurred by, the incorporators, stockholders, officers or directors as such, of the Company or of any predecessor or successor corporation, or any of them, because of the creation of the indebtedness hereby authorized, or under or by reason of the obligations, covenants or agreements contained in this Indenture or in any of the Securities or implied therefrom; and that any and all such personal liability of every name and nature, either at common law or in equity or by constitution or statute, of, and any and all such rights and claims against, every such incorporator, stockholder, officer or director as such, because of the creation of the indebtedness hereby authorized, or under or by reason of the obligations, covenants or agreements contained in this Indenture or in any of the Securities or implied therefrom, are hereby expressly waived and released as a condition of, and as a consideration for, the execution of this Indenture and the issuance of such Securities.

ARTICLE XIII
MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

SECTION 13.01 EFFECT ON SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS.

All the covenants, stipulations, promises and agreements in this Indenture contained by or on behalf of the Company shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

SECTION 13.02 ACTIONS BY SUCCESSOR.

Any act or proceeding by any provision of this Indenture authorized or required to be done or performed by any board, committee or officer of the Company shall and may be done and performed with like force and effect by the corresponding board, committee or officer of any corporation that shall at the time be the lawful successor of the Company.

SECTION 13.03 SURRENDER OF COMPANY POWERS.

The Company by instrument in writing executed by authority of its Board of Directors and delivered to the Trustee may surrender any of the powers reserved to the Company, and thereupon such power so surrendered shall terminate both as to the Company and as to any successor corporation.

SECTION 13.04 NOTICES.

Except as otherwise expressly provided herein, any notice or demand that by any provision of this Indenture is required or permitted to be given or served by the Trustee or by the Holders of Securities to or on the Company may be given or served by being deposited first class postage prepaid in a post-office letterbox addressed (until another address is filed in writing by the Company with the Trustee), as follows: 132 E. Putnam Ave, Floor 2W, Cos Cob, Connecticut 06807. Any notice, election, request or demand by the Company or any Securityholder to or upon the Trustee shall be deemed to have been sufficiently given or made, for all purposes, if given or made in writing at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee.

SECTION 13.05 GOVERNING LAW; WAIVER OF TRIAL BY JURY.

This Indenture and each Security shall be deemed to be a contract made under the internal laws of the State of [_____], and for all purposes shall be construed in accordance with the laws of said State.

EACH PARTY HERETO, AND EACH HOLDER OF A SECURITY BY ACCEPTANCE THEREOF, HEREBY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY RIGHT IT MAY HAVE TO A TRIAL BY JURY IN RESPECT OF ANY LITIGATION RELATING TO THE TRUSTEE DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY ARISING OUT OF, UNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS INDENTURE

SECTION 13.06 TREATMENT OF SECURITIES AS DEBT.

It is intended that the Securities will be treated as indebtedness and not as equity for federal income tax purposes. The provisions of this Indenture shall be interpreted to further this intention.

SECTION 13.07 COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES AND OPINIONS.

(a) Upon any application or demand by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any of the provisions of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate stating that all conditions precedent provided for in this Indenture relating to the proposed action have been complied with and an Opinion of Counsel stating that in the opinion of such counsel all such conditions precedent have been complied with, except that in the case of any such application or demand as to which the furnishing of such documents is specifically required by any provision of this Indenture relating to such particular application or demand, no additional certificate or opinion need be furnished.

(b) Each certificate or opinion provided for in this Indenture and delivered to the Trustee with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant in this Indenture shall include

(1) a statement that the Person making such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition;

(2) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based;

(3) a statement that, in the opinion of such Person, he has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and

(4) a statement as to whether or not, in the opinion of such Person, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

SECTION 13.08 PAYMENTS ON BUSINESS DAYS.

Except as provided pursuant to Section 2.01, by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, and as set forth in an Officers' Certificate or established in one or more indentures supplemental to this Indenture, in any case where the date of maturity of interest or principal of any Security or the date of redemption of any Security shall not be a Business Day, then payment of interest or principal (and premium, if any) may be made on the next succeeding Business Day with the same force and effect as if made on the nominal date of maturity or redemption, and no interest shall accrue for the period after such nominal date.

SECTION 13.09 CONFLICT WITH TRUST INDENTURE ACT.

If and to the extent that any provision of this Indenture limits, qualifies or conflicts with the duties imposed by Sections 310 to 317, inclusive, of the Trust Indenture Act, such imposed duties shall control. If any provision of this Indenture modifies or excludes any provision of the Trust Indenture Act which may be so modified or excluded, the latter provision shall be deemed to apply to this Indenture as so modified or to be excluded, as the case may be.

SECTION 13.10 COUNTERPARTS.

This Indenture may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be an original, but such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

SECTION 13.11 SEPARABILITY.

In case any one or more of the provisions contained in this Indenture or in the Securities of any series shall for any reason be held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable in any respect, such invalidity, illegality or unenforceability shall not affect any other provisions of this Indenture or of such Securities, but this Indenture and such Securities shall be construed as if such invalid or illegal or unenforceable provision had never been contained herein or therein.

SECTION 13.12 ASSIGNMENT.

The Company will have the right at all times to assign any of its rights or obligations under this Indenture to a direct or indirect wholly-owned Subsidiary of the Company, provided that, in the event of any such assignment, the Company, will remain liable for all such obligations. Subject to the foregoing, the Indenture is binding upon and inures to the benefit of the parties thereto and their respective successors and assigns. This Indenture may not otherwise be assigned by the parties thereto.

[signature page follows]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed all as of the day and year first above written.

CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT, INC.

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

_____, as **Trustee**

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

**CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT, INC.,
As Issuer,**

AND

_____,
As Trustee

INDENTURE

DATED AS OF [_____] [____], 20[____]

SUBORDINATED DEBT SECURITIES

CROSS-REFERENCE TABLE (1)

Section of Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as Amended	Indenture
310(a)	7.10
310(b)	7.09; 7.11
310(c)	Inapplicable
311(a)	7.14
311(b)	7.14
311(c)	Inapplicable
312(a)	5.02(a)
312(b)	5.02(c)
312(c)	Inapplicable
313(a)	5.04(a)
313(b)	5.04(b)
313(c)	5.04(a); 5.04(b)
313(d)	5.04(c)
314(a)	5.03; 4.06
314(b)	Inapplicable
314(c)	13.07
314(d)	Inapplicable
314(e)	13.07
314(f)	Inapplicable
315(a)	7.01(a); 7.03
315(b)	7.02
315(c)	7.01
315(d)	7.01(b)
315(e)	6.07; 7.07
316(a)	6.06; 8.04
316(b)	6.04
316(c)	8.01
317(a)	6.02
317(b)	4.03
318(a)	13.09

(1) This Cross-Reference Table does not constitute part of the Indenture and shall not have any bearing on the interpretation of any of its terms or provisions

TABLE OF CONTENTS (2)

ARTICLE I DEFINITIONS	1
SECTION 1.01 DEFINITIONS OF TERMS	1
ARTICLE II ISSUE, DESCRIPTION, TERMS, EXECUTION, REGISTRATION AND EXCHANGE OF SECURITIES	4
SECTION 2.01 DESIGNATION AND TERMS OF SECURITIES	4
SECTION 2.02 FORM OF SECURITIES AND TRUSTEE'S CERTIFICATE	6
SECTION 2.03 DENOMINATIONS: PROVISIONS FOR PAYMENT	6
SECTION 2.04 EXECUTION AND AUTHENTICATION	7
SECTION 2.05 REGISTRATION OF TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE	8
SECTION 2.06 TEMPORARY SECURITIES	8
SECTION 2.07 MUTILATED, DESTROYED, LOST OR STOLEN SECURITIES	9
SECTION 2.08 CANCELLATION	9
SECTION 2.09 BENEFITS OF INDENTURE	9
SECTION 2.10 AUTHENTICATING AGENT	10
SECTION 2.11 GLOBAL SECURITIES	10
ARTICLE III REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES AND SINKING FUND PROVISIONS	11
SECTION 3.01 REDEMPTION	11
SECTION 3.02 NOTICE OF REDEMPTION	12
SECTION 3.03 PAYMENT UPON REDEMPTION	12
SECTION 3.04 SINKING FUND.	13
SECTION 3.05 SATISFACTION OF SINKING FUND PAYMENTS WITH SECURITIES	13
SECTION 3.06 REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES FOR SINKING FUND	13
ARTICLE IV COVENANTS	13
SECTION 4.01 PAYMENT OF PRINCIPAL, PREMIUM AND INTEREST	13
SECTION 4.02 MAINTENANCE OF OFFICE OR AGENCY	14
SECTION 4.03 PAYING AGENTS	14
SECTION 4.04 APPOINTMENT TO FILL VACANCY IN OFFICE OF TRUSTEE	15
SECTION 4.05 COMPLIANCE WITH CONSOLIDATION PROVISIONS	15
SECTION 4.06 STATEMENT BY OFFICERS AS TO DEFAULT	15
ARTICLE V SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE	15
SECTION 5.01 COMPANY TO FURNISH TRUSTEE NAMES AND ADDRESSES OF SECURITYHOLDERS	15
SECTION 5.02 PRESERVATION OF INFORMATION; COMMUNICATIONS WITH SECURITYHOLDERS	15
SECTION 5.03 REPORTS BY THE COMPANY	16
SECTION 5.04 REPORTS BY THE TRUSTEE	16
ARTICLE VI REMEDIES OF THE TRUSTEE AND SECURITYHOLDERS ON EVENT OF DEFAULT	16
SECTION 6.01 EVENTS OF DEFAULT	16
SECTION 6.02 COLLECTION OF INDEBTEDNESS AND SUITS FOR ENFORCEMENT BY TRUSTEE	18
SECTION 6.03 APPLICATION OF MONEYS COLLECTED	19
SECTION 6.04 LIMITATION ON SUITS	19
SECTION 6.05 RIGHTS AND REMEDIES CUMULATIVE; DELAY OR OMISSION NOT WAIVER	20
SECTION 6.06 CONTROL BY SECURITYHOLDERS	20

SECTION 6.07 UNDERTAKING TO PAY COSTS	20
ARTICLE VII CONCERNING THE TRUSTEE	21
SECTION 7.01 CERTAIN DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF TRUSTEE	21
SECTION 7.02 NOTICE OF DEFAULTS	22
SECTION 7.03 CERTAIN RIGHTS OF TRUSTEE	22
SECTION 7.04 TRUSTEE NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR RECITALS OR ISSUANCE OR SECURITIES	23
SECTION 7.05 MAY HOLD SECURITIES	23
SECTION 7.06 MONEYS HELD IN TRUST	23
SECTION 7.07 COMPENSATION AND REIMBURSEMENT	23
SECTION 7.08 RELIANCE ON OFFICERS' CERTIFICATE	24
SECTION 7.09 DISQUALIFICATION; CONFLICTING INTERESTS	24
SECTION 7.10 CORPORATE TRUSTEE REQUIRED; ELIGIBILITY	24
SECTION 7.11 RESIGNATION AND REMOVAL; APPOINTMENT OF SUCCESSOR	25
SECTION 7.12 ACCEPTANCE OF APPOINTMENT BY SUCCESSOR	25
SECTION 7.13 MERGER, CONVERSION, CONSOLIDATION OR SUCCESSION TO BUSINESS	26
SECTION 7.14 PREFERENTIAL COLLECTION OF CLAIMS AGAINST THE COMPANY	27
ARTICLE VIII CONCERNING THE SECURITYHOLDERS	27
SECTION 8.01 EVIDENCE OF ACTION BY SECURITYHOLDERS	27
SECTION 8.02 PROOF OF EXECUTION BY SECURITYHOLDERS	27
SECTION 8.03 WHO MAY BE DEEMED OWNERS	27
SECTION 8.04 CERTAIN SECURITIES OWNED BY COMPANY DISREGARDED	28
SECTION 8.05 ACTIONS BINDING ON FUTURE SECURITYHOLDERS	28
ARTICLE IX SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	28
SECTION 9.01 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITHOUT THE CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS	28
SECTION 9.02 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITH CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS	29
SECTION 9.03 EFFECT OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	30
SECTION 9.04 SECURITIES AFFECTED BY SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	30
SECTION 9.05 EXECUTION OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	30
ARTICLE X SUCCESSOR ENTITY	30
SECTION 10.01 COMPANY MAY CONSOLIDATE, ETC.	30
SECTION 10.02 SUCCESSOR ENTITY SUBSTITUTED	31
SECTION 10.03 EVIDENCE OF CONSOLIDATION, ETC. TO TRUSTEE	31
ARTICLE XI SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE; DEFEASANCE	31
SECTION 11.01 SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE	31
SECTION 11.02 DEFEASANCE	32
SECTION 11.03 DEPOSITED MONEYS TO BE HELD IN TRUST	33
SECTION 11.04 PAYMENT OF MONEYS HELD BY PAYING AGENTS	33
SECTION 11.05 REPAYMENT TO COMPANY	33
ARTICLE XII IMMUNITY OF INCORPORATORS, SHAREHOLDERS, OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS	33
SECTION 12.01 NO RECOURSE	33
ARTICLE XIII MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS	34
SECTION 13.01 EFFECT ON SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS	34
SECTION 13.02 ACTIONS BY SUCCESSOR	34
SECTION 13.03 SURRENDER OF COMPANY POWERS	34
SECTION 13.04 NOTICES	34

SECTION 13.05 GOVERNING LAW; WAIVER OF TRIAL BY JURY	34
SECTION 13.06 TREATMENT OF SECURITIES AS DEBT	34
SECTION 13.07 COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES AND OPINIONS	34
SECTION 13.08 PAYMENTS ON BUSINESS DAYS	35
SECTION 13.09 CONFLICT WITH TRUST INDENTURE ACT	35
SECTION 13.10 COUNTERPARTS	35
SECTION 13.11 SEPARABILITY	35
SECTION 13.12 ASSIGNMENT	35
ARTICLE XIV SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES	36
SECTION 14.01 SUBORDINATION TERMS	36

(2) This Table of Contents does not constitute part of the Indenture and shall not have any bearing on the interpretation of any of its terms or provisions.

INDENTURE, dated as of [_____] [___], 20[___], between Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc., a Connecticut corporation (the “Company”), and [_____] a [_____] as trustee (the “Trustee”):

RECITALS OF THE COMPANY

WHEREAS, for its lawful corporate purposes, the Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance of subordinated debt securities (hereinafter referred to as the “Securities”), in an unlimited aggregate principal amount to be issued from time to time in one or more series as provided in this Indenture, as registered Securities without coupons, to be authenticated by the certificate of the Trustee;

WHEREAS, to provide the terms and conditions upon which the Securities are to be authenticated, issued and delivered, the Company has duly authorized the execution of this Indenture; and

WHEREAS, all things necessary to make this Indenture a valid agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the Holders thereof, it is mutually covenanted and agreed as follows for the equal and ratable benefit of the Holders of Securities or of series thereof.

ARTICLE I DEFINITIONS

SECTION 1.01 DEFINITIONS OF TERMS.

The terms defined in this Section (except as in this Indenture otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires) for all purposes of this Indenture and of any indenture supplemental hereto shall have the respective meanings specified in this Section and shall include the plural as well as the singular. All other terms used in this Indenture that are defined in the Trust Indenture Act, or that are by reference in said Trust Indenture Act defined in the Securities Act (except as herein otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires), shall have the meanings assigned to such terms in said Trust Indenture Act and in said Securities Act as in force at the date of the execution of this instrument.

“ARTICLE”, “SECTION” or other subdivisions refer to Articles, Sections or other subdivisions of this Indenture.

“AUTHENTICATING AGENT” means an authenticating agent with respect to all or any of the series of Securities appointed with respect to all or any series of the Securities by the Trustee pursuant to Section 2.10.

“BANKRUPTCY LAW” means Title 11, U.S. Code, or any similar federal or state law for the relief of debtors.

“BOARD OF DIRECTORS” means the Board of Directors of the Company or any duly authorized committee of such Board.

“BOARD RESOLUTION” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification.

“BUSINESS DAY” means, with respect to any series of Securities, any day other than a Saturday or Sunday, or a day on which federal or state banking institutions in [_____] are authorized or obligated by law, executive order or regulation to close.

“CERTIFICATE” means a certificate signed by the principal executive officer, the principal financial officer or the principal accounting officer of the Company. The Certificate need not comply with the provisions of Section 13.07.

“COMMISSION” means the Securities and Exchange Commission.

“COMPANY” means Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc., a Connecticut corporation, and its subsidiaries, and, subject to the provisions of Article X, shall also include its successors and assigns.

“CORPORATE TRUST OFFICE” means the office of the Trustee at which, at any particular time, its corporate trust business shall be principally administered, which office at the date hereof is located at [_____].

“COVENANT DEFEASANCE” has the meaning given in Section 11.02.

“CUSTODIAN” means any receiver, trustee, assignee, liquidator or similar official under any Bankruptcy Law.

“DEFAULT” means any event, act or condition that with notice or lapse of time, or both, would constitute an Event of Default.

“DEFAULTED INTEREST” has the meaning given in Section 2.03.

“DEPOSITARY” means, with respect to Securities of any series, for which the Company shall determine that such Securities will be issued as a Global Security, [_____], another clearing agency, or any successor registered as a clearing agency under the Exchange Act, or other applicable statute or regulation, which, in each case, shall be designated by the Company pursuant to either Section 2.01 or 2.11.

“EVENT OF DEFAULT” means, with respect to Securities of a particular series any event specified in Section 6.01, continued for the period of time, if any, therein designated.

“EXCHANGE ACT” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or any successor statute or statutes thereto.

“GLOBAL SECURITY” means, with respect to any series of Securities, a Security executed by the Company and delivered by the Trustee to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository’s instruction, all in accordance with the Indenture, which shall be registered in the name of the Depository or its nominee.

“GOVERNMENTAL OBLIGATIONS” means securities that are (i) direct obligations of the United States of America for the payment of which its full faith and credit is pledged or (ii) obligations of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by the United States of America that, in either case, are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof, and shall also include a depository receipt issued by a bank (as defined in Section 3(a)(2) of the Securities Act) as custodian with respect to any such Governmental Obligation or a specific payment of principal of or interest on any such Governmental Obligation held by such custodian for the account of the Holder of such depository receipt; provided, however, that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the Holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the Governmental Obligation or the specific payment of principal of or interest on the Governmental Obligation evidenced by such depository receipt.

“HEREIN”, “HEREOF” and “HEREUNDER”, and other words of similar import, refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

“INCLUDING”, unless the context requires otherwise, means including without limitation.

“INDENTURE” means this instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into in accordance with the terms hereof, including, for all purposes of this instrument and any such supplemental indenture, the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act that are deemed to be a part of and govern this instrument and any such supplemental indenture, respectively. The term “Indenture” shall also include the terms of particular series of Securities established as contemplated by Section 2.01.

“INTEREST PAYMENT DATE”, when used with respect to any installment of interest on a Security of a particular series, means the date specified in such Security or in a Board Resolution or in an indenture supplemental hereto with respect to such series as the fixed date on which an installment of interest with respect to Securities of that series is due and payable.

“LEGAL DEFEASANCE” has the meaning given in Section 11.02.

“OFFICERS’ CERTIFICATE” means a certificate signed by the President or a Vice President and by the Treasurer or an Assistant Treasurer or the Controller or an Assistant Controller or the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company that is delivered to the Trustee in accordance with the terms hereof. Each such certificate shall include the statements provided for in Section 13.07, if and to the extent required by the provisions thereof.

“OPINION OF COUNSEL” means an opinion in writing of legal counsel acceptable to the Trustee, who may be an employee of or counsel for the Company that is delivered to the Trustee in accordance with the terms hereof. Each such opinion shall include the statements provided for in Section 13.07, if and to the extent required by the provisions thereof.

“ORIGINAL ISSUE DISCOUNT SECURITY” means any Security which provides for an amount less than the principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.01.

“OUTSTANDING”, when used with reference to Securities of any series, means, subject to the provisions of Section 8.04, as of any particular time, all Securities of that series theretofore authenticated and delivered by the Trustee under this Indenture, except (a) Securities theretofore canceled by the Trustee or any paying agent, or delivered to the Trustee or any paying agent for cancellation or that have previously been canceled; (b) Securities or portions thereof for the payment or redemption of which moneys or Governmental Obligations in the necessary amount shall have been deposited in trust with the Trustee or with any paying agent (other than the Company) or shall have been set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own paying agent); provided, however, that if such Securities or portions of such Securities are to be redeemed prior to the maturity thereof, notice of such redemption shall have been given as in Article III; or provision satisfactory to the Trustee shall have been made for giving such notice; and (c) Securities in lieu of or in substitution for which other Securities shall have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to the terms of Section 2.07; provided, however, that in determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of the Outstanding Securities have given, made or taken any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action hereunder as of any date, the principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security which shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the amount of the principal thereof which would be due and payable as of such date upon acceleration of the maturity thereof to such date pursuant to Section 6.01.

“PERSON” means any individual, corporation, limited liability company, partnership, joint-venture, joint-stock company, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof.

“PREDECESSOR SECURITY” of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under Section 2.07 in lieu of a lost, destroyed or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the lost, destroyed or stolen Security.

“RESPONSIBLE OFFICER” when used with respect to the Trustee means any officer assigned to the [_____] [Division / Unit] (or any successor division or unit) of the Trustee located at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, who shall have direct responsibility for the administration of this Indenture, and for the purposes of Section 7.01(b)(ii) and Section 315(b) of the Trust Indenture Act shall also include any other officer of the Trustee to whom any corporate trust matter is referred because of his or her knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject.

“SECURITIES” means the debt securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture.

“SECURITIES ACT” means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or any successor statute or statutes thereto.

“SECURITYHOLDER”, “HOLDER of SECURITIES”, “REGISTERED HOLDER”, “HOLDER”, or other similar term, means the Person or Persons in whose name or names a particular Security shall be registered on the books of the Company kept for that purpose in accordance with the terms of this Indenture.

“SECURITY REGISTER” has the meaning given in Section 2.05.

“SECURITY REGISTRAR” has the meaning given in Section 2.05.

“SENIOR INDEBTEDNESS” means the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest (including any interest accruing subsequent to the filing of a petition of bankruptcy at the rate provided for in the documentation with respect thereto, whether or not such interest is an allowed claim under applicable law) on any indebtedness of the Company, incurred or assumed, unless, in the case of any particular indebtedness, the instrument creating or evidencing the same or pursuant to which the same is outstanding expressly provides that such indebtedness shall not be senior in right of payment to the Securities. Notwithstanding the foregoing, “SENIOR INDEBTEDNESS” shall not include (i) any indebtedness of the Company to a Subsidiary of the Company or any Affiliate of the Company or any of such Affiliate’s Subsidiaries, (ii) indebtedness to, or guaranteed on behalf of, any shareholder, director, officer or employee of the Company or any Subsidiary of the Company (including, without limitation, amounts owed for compensation), (iii) indebtedness to trade creditors and other amounts incurred in connection with obtaining goods, materials or services, (iv) any liability for federal, state, local or other taxes owed or owing by the Company, (v) that portion of any indebtedness incurred in violation of an incurrence test applicable to a series of the Securities, (vi) that portion of any indebtedness which, when incurred and without respect to any election under Section 1111(b) of Title 11, United States Code, is without recourse to the Company and (vii) that portion of any indebtedness which is, by its express terms, subordinated in right of payment to the Securities.

“SUBSIDIARY” means, with respect to any Person, (i) any corporation at least a majority of whose outstanding Voting Stock shall at the time be owned, directly or indirectly, by such Person or by one or more of its Subsidiaries or by such Person and one or more of its Subsidiaries, (ii) any general partnership, limited liability company, joint venture or similar entity, at least a majority of whose outstanding partnership or similar interests shall at the time be owned by such Person, or by one or more of its Subsidiaries, or by such Person and one or more of its Subsidiaries and (iii) any limited partnership of which such Person or any of its Subsidiaries is a general partner.

“TRUSTEE” means [] and, subject to the provisions of Article VII, shall also include its successors and assigns, and, if at any time there is more than one Person acting in such capacity hereunder, “Trustee” shall mean each such Person. The term “Trustee” as used with respect to a particular series of the Securities shall mean the trustee with respect to that series.

“TRUST INDENTURE ACT” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, subject to the provisions of Sections 9.01, 9.02, and 10.01, as in effect at the date of execution of this instrument.

“VOTING STOCK”, as applied to stock of any Person, means shares, interests, participations or other equivalents in the equity interest (however designated) in such Person having ordinary voting power for the election of a majority of the directors (or the equivalent) of such Person, other than shares, interests, participations or other equivalents having such power only by reason of the occurrence of a contingency.

ARTICLE II
ISSUE, DESCRIPTION, TERMS, EXECUTION,
REGISTRATION AND EXCHANGE OF SECURITIES

SECTION 2.01 DESIGNATION AND TERMS OF SECURITIES.

The aggregate principal amount of Securities that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited. The Securities may be issued in one or more series up to the aggregate principal amount, if any, of Securities of that series from time to time authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution or pursuant to one or more indentures supplemental hereto. Prior to the initial issuance of Securities of any series, there shall be established in or pursuant to a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officers’ Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto:

- (1) the title of the Security of the series (which shall distinguish the Securities of the series from all other Securities);
- (2) any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of that series);

- (3) the date or dates on which the principal of the Securities of the series is payable, any original issue discount that may apply to the Securities of that series upon their issuance, the principal amount due at maturity and the place(s) of payment;
- (4) the rate or rates at which the Securities of the series shall bear interest or the manner of calculation of such rate or rates, if any;
- (5) the date or dates from which such interest shall accrue, the Interest Payment Dates on which such interest will be payable or the manner of determination of such Interest Payment Dates, the place(s) of payment, and the record date or other method for the determination of Holders to whom interest is payable on any such Interest Payment Dates;
- (6) the right, if any, to extend the interest payment periods and the duration of such extension;
- (7) the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which, Securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company;
- (8) the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem or purchase Securities of the series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provisions (including payments made in cash in satisfaction of future sinking fund obligations) or at the option of a Holder thereof and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which, and the terms and conditions upon which, Securities of the series shall be redeemed or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;
- (9) any additional or different subordination terms applicable to the Securities of the series;
- (10) the form of the Securities of the series, including the form of the Trustee's certificate of authentication for such series;
- (11) if other than denominations of one thousand U.S. dollars (\$1,000) or any integral multiple thereof, the denominations in which the Securities of the series shall be issuable (including denominations of foreign currency);
- (12) any and all other terms with respect to such series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the terms of this Indenture);
- (13) whether the Securities of the series are issuable as a Global Security and, in such case, the identity of the Depository for such series and any other or different terms in respect of such Global Security;
- (14) whether the Securities of the series will be convertible into shares of common stock or other securities of the Company and, if so, the terms and conditions upon which such Securities will be so convertible, including the conversion price and the conversion period;
- (15) if other than the principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of Securities of the series which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.01;
- (16) any additional or different Events of Default or restrictive covenants provided for with respect to the Securities of the series;
- (17) if applicable, that the Securities of the series, in whole or in specified part, shall be defeasible pursuant to Section 11.02 and, if other than by a Board Resolution, the manner in which any election by the Company to defease such Securities shall be evidenced;
- (18) if other than the currency of the United States of America, the currency, currencies or currency units in which the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of the series shall be payable and the manner of determining the equivalent thereof in the currency of the United States of America for any purpose, including for purposes of the definition of "Outstanding" in Section 1.01, and/or the property, including securities of the Company, in which the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of the series may be payable and the terms and conditions of such payment in property, including whether at the option of the Company or the Securityholder; and

(19) the terms and conditions, if any, upon which the Company shall pay amounts in addition to the stated interest, premium, if any and principal amounts of the Securities of the series to any Securityholder that is not a “United States person” for federal tax purposes.

All Securities of any one series shall be substantially identical except as to denomination and except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to any such Board Resolution or in any indentures supplemental hereto. If any of the terms of the series are established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Officers’ Certificate setting forth the terms of the series. Securities of any particular series may be issued at various times, with different dates on which the principal or any installment of principal is payable, with different rates of interest, if any, or different methods by which rates of interest may be determined, with different dates on which such interest may be payable and with different redemption dates. Notwithstanding Section 2.01(2) and unless otherwise expressly provided with respect to a series of Securities, the aggregate principal amount of a series of Securities may be increased and additional Securities of such series may be issued up to the maximum aggregate principal amount authorized with respect to such series as increased.

SECTION 2.02 FORM OF SECURITIES AND TRUSTEE’S CERTIFICATE.

The Securities of any series and the Trustee’s certificate of authentication to be borne by such Securities shall be substantially of the tenor and purport as set forth in one or more indentures supplemental hereto or as provided in or pursuant to a Board Resolution and as set forth in an Officers’ Certificate. The Securities may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification or designation and such legends or endorsements printed, lithographed or engraved thereon as the Company may deem appropriate and as are not inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, or as may be required to comply with any law or with any rule or regulation made pursuant thereto or with any rule or regulation of any stock exchange on which Securities of that series may be listed, or to conform to usage.

SECTION 2.03 DENOMINATIONS: PROVISIONS FOR PAYMENT.

The Securities shall be issuable as registered Securities and in the denominations of one thousand U.S. dollars (\$1,000) or any integral multiple thereof, subject to Section 2.01(11). The Securities of a particular series shall bear interest payable on the dates and at the rates specified or provided for with respect to that series. Except as contemplated by Section 2.01(18), the principal of and the interest on the Securities of any series, as well as any premium thereon in case of redemption thereof prior to maturity, shall be payable in the coin or currency of the United States of America that at the time is legal tender for public and private debt, at the office or agency of the Company maintained for that purpose in [_____]; provided, however, that at the option of the Company payment of interest may be made by check mailed to the address of the Person entitled thereto as such address shall appear in the Security Register. Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication by the Trustee. Except as contemplated by Section 2.01(4), interest on the Securities shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year composed of twelve 30-day months. Except as contemplated by Section 2.01(5), the interest installment on any Security that is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date for Securities of that series shall be paid to the Person in whose name said Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the regular record date for such interest installment. In the event that any Security of a particular series or portion thereof is called for redemption and the redemption date is subsequent to a regular record date with respect to any Interest Payment Date and prior to such Interest Payment Date, interest on such Security will be paid upon presentation and surrender of such Security as provided in Section 3.03. Any interest on any Security that is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date for Securities of the same series (herein called “Defaulted Interest”) shall forthwith cease to be payable to the registered Holder on the relevant regular record date by virtue of having been such Holder; and such Defaulted Interest shall be paid by the Company, at its election, as provided in clause (1) or clause (2) below:

(1) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on Securities to the Persons in whose names such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a special record date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner: the Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each such Security and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this clause provided. Thereupon the Trustee shall fix a special record date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall not be more than 15 nor less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company of such special record date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the special record date therefor to be mailed, first class postage prepaid, to each Securityholder at his or her address as it appears in the Security Register (as hereinafter defined), not less than 10 days prior to such special record date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the special record date therefor having been mailed as aforesaid, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose names such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered on such special record date.

(2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on any Securities in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this clause, such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee. Unless otherwise set forth in a Board Resolution or one or more indentures supplemental hereto establishing the terms of any series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof, the term “regular record date” as used in this Section with respect to a series of Securities with respect to any Interest Payment Date for such series shall mean either the fifteenth day of the month immediately preceding the month in which an Interest Payment Date established for such series pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof shall occur, if such Interest Payment Date is the first day of a month, or the last day of the month immediately preceding the month in which an Interest Payment Date established for such series pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof shall occur, if such Interest Payment Date is the fifteenth day of a month, whether or not such date is a Business Day. Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section, each Security of a series delivered under this Indenture upon transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security of such series shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, that were carried by such other Security.

SECTION 2.04 EXECUTION AND AUTHENTICATION.

The Securities shall be signed on behalf of the Company by its President, or one of its Vice Presidents, or its Treasurer, or one of its Assistant Treasurers, attested by its Secretary or one of its Assistant Secretaries. Signatures may be in the form of a manual or facsimile signature. The Company may use the facsimile signature of any Person who shall have been a President or Vice President thereof, or of any Person who shall have been the Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary thereof, notwithstanding the fact that at the time the Securities shall be authenticated and delivered or disposed of such Person shall have ceased to be the President or a Vice President, or the Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary, of the Company. The Securities may contain such notations, legends or endorsements required by law, stock exchange rule or usage. A Security shall not be valid until authenticated manually by an authorized signatory of the Trustee, or by an Authenticating Agent. Such signature shall be conclusive evidence and the only evidence that the Security so authenticated has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder and that the Holder is entitled to the benefits of this Indenture. At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities of any series executed by the Company to the Trustee for authentication, together with a written order of the Company for the authentication and delivery of such Securities, signed by its President or any Vice President and its Secretary or any Assistant Secretary, and the Trustee in accordance with such written order shall authenticate and deliver such Securities. In authenticating such Securities and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 7.01) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the form and terms thereof have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture and that such Securities, when authenticated and delivered by the Trustee and issued by the Company in the manner and subject to any conditions specified in such Opinion of Counsel, will constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company enforceable in accordance with their terms, subject to any Bankruptcy Law or other insolvency, fraudulent transfer, reorganization, moratorium and similar laws of general applicability relating to or affecting creditors’ rights and to general equity principles and to other customary exceptions. The Trustee shall not be required to authenticate such Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the Trustee’s own rights, duties or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner that is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustee.

SECTION 2.05 REGISTRATION OF TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE.

(a) Securities of any series may be exchanged upon presentation thereof at the office or agency of the Company designated for such purpose in [_____], for other Securities of such series of authorized denominations, and for a like aggregate principal amount, upon payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge in relation thereto, all as provided in this Section. In respect of any Securities so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, the Trustee shall authenticate and such office or agency shall deliver in exchange therefor the Security or Securities of the same series that the Securityholder making the exchange shall be entitled to receive, bearing numbers not contemporaneously outstanding.

(b) The Company shall keep, or cause to be kept, at its office or agency designated for such purpose in [_____], or such other location designated by the Company a register or registers (herein referred to as the "Security Register") in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall register the Securities and the transfers of Securities as in this Article provided and which at all reasonable times shall be open for inspection by the Trustee. The registrar for the purpose of registering Securities and transfer of Securities as herein provided shall be appointed as authorized by Board Resolution (the "Security Registrar"). Upon surrender for transfer of any Security at the office or agency of the Company designated for such purpose, the Company shall execute, the Trustee shall authenticate and such office or agency shall deliver in the name of the transferee or transferees a new Security or Securities of the same series as the Security presented for a like aggregate principal amount. All Securities presented or surrendered for exchange or registration of transfer, as provided in this Section, shall be accompanied (if so required by the Company or the Security Registrar) by a written instrument or instruments of transfer, in form satisfactory to the Company or the Security Registrar, duly executed by the registered Holder or by such Holder's duly authorized attorney in writing.

(c) No service charge shall be made for any exchange or registration of transfer of Securities, or issue of new Securities in case of partial redemption of any series, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge in relation thereto, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 2.06, Section 3.03(b) and Section 9.04 not involving any transfer. The Company shall not be required (i) to issue, exchange or register the transfer of any Securities during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of the mailing of a notice of redemption of less than all the Outstanding Securities of the same series and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, nor (ii) to register the transfer of or exchange any Securities of any series or portions thereof called for redemption. The provisions of this Section 2.05 are, with respect to any Global Security, subject to Section 2.11 hereof.

SECTION 2.06 TEMPORARY SECURITIES.

Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities (printed, lithographed or typewritten) of any authorized denomination. Such temporary Securities shall be substantially in the form of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued, but with such omissions, insertions and variations as may be appropriate for temporary Securities, all as may be determined by the Company. Every temporary Security of any series shall be executed by the Company and be authenticated by the Trustee upon the same conditions and in substantially the same manner, and with like effect, as the definitive Securities of such series. Without unnecessary delay the Company will execute and will furnish definitive Securities of such series and thereupon any or all temporary Securities of such series may be surrendered in exchange therefor (without charge to the Holders), at the office or agency of the Company designated for the purpose in [_____], and the Trustee shall authenticate and such office or agency shall deliver in exchange for such temporary Securities an equal aggregate principal amount of definitive Securities of such series, unless the Company advises the Trustee to the effect that definitive Securities need not be executed and furnished until further notice from the Company. Until so exchanged, the temporary Securities of such series shall be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series authenticated and delivered hereunder.

SECTION 2.07 MUTILATED, DESTROYED, LOST OR STOLEN SECURITIES.

In case any temporary or definitive Security shall become mutilated or be destroyed, lost or stolen, the Company (subject to the next succeeding sentence) shall execute, and upon the Company's request the Trustee (subject as aforesaid) shall authenticate and deliver, a new Security of the same series, bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding, in exchange and substitution for the mutilated Security, or in lieu of and in substitution for the Security so destroyed, lost or stolen. In every case the applicant for a substituted Security shall furnish to the Company and the Trustee such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them harmless, and, in every case of destruction, loss or theft, the applicant shall also furnish to the Company and the Trustee evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of the applicant's Security and of the ownership thereof. The Trustee may authenticate any such substituted Security and deliver the same upon the written request or authorization of any officer of the Company. Upon the issuance of any substituted Security, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith. In case any Security that has matured or is about to mature shall become mutilated or be destroyed, lost or stolen, the Company may, instead of issuing a substitute Security, pay or authorize the payment of the same (without surrender thereof except in the case of a mutilated Security) if the applicant for such payment shall furnish to the Company and the Trustee such security or indemnity as they may require to save them harmless, and, in case of destruction, loss or theft, evidence to the satisfaction of the Company and the Trustee of the destruction, loss or theft of such Security and of the ownership thereof. Every replacement Security issued pursuant to the provisions of this Section shall constitute an additional contractual obligation of the Company whether or not the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be found at any time, or be enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of the same series duly issued hereunder. All Securities shall be held and owned upon the express condition that the foregoing provisions are exclusive with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities, and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) any and all other rights or remedies, notwithstanding any law or statute existing or hereafter enacted to the contrary with respect to the replacement or payment of negotiable instruments or other securities without their surrender.

SECTION 2.08 CANCELLATION.

All Securities surrendered for the purpose of payment, redemption, exchange or registration of transfer shall, if surrendered to the Company or any paying agent, be delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, or, if surrendered to the Trustee, shall be cancelled by it, and no Securities shall be issued in lieu thereof except as expressly required or permitted by any of the provisions of this Indenture. On request of the Company at the time of such surrender, the Trustee shall deliver to the Company canceled Securities held by the Trustee. In the absence of such request the Trustee may dispose of canceled Securities in accordance with its standard procedures and deliver a certificate of disposition to the Company. If the Company shall otherwise acquire any of the Securities, however, such acquisition shall not operate as a redemption or satisfaction of the indebtedness represented by such Securities unless and until the same are delivered to the Trustee for cancellation.

SECTION 2.09 BENEFITS OF INDENTURE.

Nothing in this Indenture or in the Securities, express or implied, shall give or be construed to give to any Person, other than the parties hereto and the Holders of the Securities (and, with respect to the provisions of Article XIV, the holders of Senior Indebtedness) any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under or in respect of this Indenture, or under any covenant, condition or provision herein contained; all such covenants, conditions and provisions being for the sole benefit of the parties hereto and of the Holders of the Securities (and, with respect to the provisions of Article XIV, the holder of Senior Indebtedness).

SECTION 2.10 AUTHENTICATING AGENT.

So long as any of the Securities of any series remain Outstanding there may be an Authenticating Agent for any or all such series of Securities which the Trustee shall have the right to appoint. Said Authenticating Agent shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series issued upon exchange, transfer or partial redemption thereof, and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. All references in this Indenture to the authentication of Securities by the Trustee shall be deemed to include authentication by an Authenticating Agent for such series. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and shall be a corporation that has a combined capital and surplus, as most recently reported or determined by it, sufficient under the laws of any jurisdiction under which it is organized or in which it is doing business to conduct a trust business, and that is otherwise authorized under such laws to conduct such business and is subject to supervision or examination by federal or state authorities. If at any time any Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with these provisions, it shall resign immediately. Any Authenticating Agent may at any time resign by giving written notice of resignation to the Trustee and to the Company. The Trustee may at any time (and upon request by the Company shall) terminate the agency of any Authenticating Agent by giving written notice of termination to such Authenticating Agent and to the Company. Upon resignation, termination or cessation of eligibility of any Authenticating Agent, the Trustee may appoint an eligible successor Authenticating Agent acceptable to the Company. Any successor Authenticating Agent, upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder, shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent pursuant hereto. Any corporation into which an Authenticating Agent may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which such Authenticating Agent shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to the corporate agency or corporate trust business of an Authenticating Agent, shall continue to be an Authenticating Agent, provided that such corporation shall be otherwise eligible under this Section, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of the Trustee or the Authenticating Agent.

SECTION 2.11 GLOBAL SECURITIES.

(a) If the Company shall establish pursuant to Section 2.01 that the Securities of a particular series are to be issued as a Global Security, then the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall, in accordance with Section 2.04, authenticate and deliver, a Global Security that

- (1) shall represent, and shall be denominated in an amount equal to the aggregate principal amount of, all or a portion of the Outstanding Securities of such series,
- (2) shall be registered in the name of the Depository or its nominee,
- (3) shall be delivered by the Trustee to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository's instruction, and
- (4) shall bear a legend substantially to the following effect: "Except as otherwise provided in Section 2.11 of the Indenture, this Security may be transferred, in whole but not in part, only to the Depository, another nominee of the Depository or to a successor Depository or to a nominee of such successor Depository."

(b) Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 2.05, the Global Security of a series may be transferred, in whole but not in part and in the manner provided in Section 2.05, only to the Depository for such series, another nominee of the Depository for such series, or to a successor Depository for such series selected or approved by the Company or to a nominee of such successor Depository.

(c) If at any time the Depository for a series of the Securities notifies the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depository for such series or if at any time the Depository for such series shall no longer be registered or in good standing under the Exchange Act, or other applicable statute or regulation, and a successor Depository for such series is not appointed by the Company within 90 days after the Company receives such notice or becomes aware of such condition, as the case may be, this Section 2.11 shall no longer be applicable to the Securities of such series and the Company will execute, and subject to Section 2.05, the Trustee will authenticate and deliver the Securities of such series in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security of such series in exchange for such Global Security. In addition, the Company may at any time determine that the Securities of any series shall no longer be represented by a Global Security and that the provisions of this Section 2.11 shall no longer apply to the Securities of such series. In such event the Company will execute and subject to Section 2.05, the Trustee, upon receipt of an Officers' Certificate evidencing such determination by the Company, will authenticate and deliver the Securities of such series in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security of such series in exchange for such Global Security. Upon the exchange of the Global Security for such Securities in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, the Global Security shall be canceled by the Trustee. Such Securities in definitive registered form issued in exchange for the Global Security pursuant to this Section 2.11(c) shall be registered in such names and in such authorized denominations as the Depository, pursuant to instructions from its direct or indirect participants or otherwise, shall instruct the Trustee. The Trustee shall deliver such Securities to the Depository for delivery to the Persons in whose names such Securities are so registered.

(d) None of the Trustee, the Security Registrar or any paying agent shall have any responsibility or obligation to any beneficial owner in a Global Security, a member of, or a participant in the Depositary or other Person with respect to the accuracy of the records of the Depositary or its nominee or of any participant or member thereof, with respect to any ownership interest in the Securities or with respect to the delivery to any participant, member, beneficial owner or other Person (other than the Depositary) of any notice (including any notice of redemption) or the payment of any amount, under or with respect to such Securities. All notices and communications to be given to the Securityholders and all payments to be made to Securityholders under the Securities and this Indenture shall be given or made only to or upon the order of the registered holders (which shall be the Depositary or its nominee in the case of the Global Security). The rights of beneficial owners in the Global Security shall be exercised only through the Depositary subject to the applicable procedures. The Trustee, the Security Registrar and any paying agent shall be entitled to rely and shall be fully protected in relying upon information furnished by the Depositary with respect to its members, participants and any beneficial owners. The Trustee, the Security Registrar and any paying agent shall be entitled to deal with any depositary (including the Depositary), and any nominee thereof, that is the registered holder of any Global Security for all purposes of this Indenture relating to such Global Security (including the payment of principal, premium, if any, and interest and additional amounts, if any, and the giving of instructions or directions by or to the owner or holder of a beneficial ownership interest in such Global Security) as the sole holder of such Global Security and shall have no obligations to the beneficial owners thereof. None of the Trustee, the Security Registrar or any paying agent shall have any responsibility or liability for any acts or omissions of any such depositary with respect to such Global Security, for the records of any such depositary, including records in respect of beneficial ownership interests in respect of any such Global Security, for any transactions between such depositary and any participant in such depositary or between or among any such depositary, any such participant and/or any holder or owner of a beneficial interest in such Global Security, or for any transfers of beneficial interests in any such Global Security.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, with respect to any Global Security, nothing herein shall prevent the Company, the Trustee, the Security Registrar, any paying agent, or any other agent of the Company or any agent of the Trustee, from giving effect to any written certification, proxy or other authorization furnished by any depositary (including the Depositary), as a Securityholder, with respect to such Global Security or impair, as between such depositary and owners of beneficial interests in such Global Security, the operation of customary practices governing the exercise of the rights of such depositary (or its nominee) as Holder of such Global Security.

**ARTICLE III
REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES AND SINKING FUND
PROVISIONS**

SECTION 3.01 REDEMPTION.

The Company may redeem the Securities of any series issued hereunder on and after the dates and in accordance with the terms established for such series pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof.

SECTION 3.02 NOTICE OF REDEMPTION.

(a) In case the Company shall desire to exercise such right to redeem all or, as the case may be, a portion of the Securities of any series in accordance with the right reserved so to do, the Company shall (upon five Business Days prior notice to the Trustee, unless a shorter notice period shall be acceptable to the Trustee), or shall cause the Trustee to, give notice of such redemption to Holders of the Securities of such series to be redeemed by mailing, first class postage prepaid, a notice of such redemption not less than 30 days and not more than 90 days before the date fixed for redemption of that series to such Holders at their last addresses as they shall appear upon the Security Register unless a shorter period is specified in the Securities to be redeemed. Any notice that is mailed in the manner herein provided shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given, whether or not the registered Holder receives the notice. In any case, failure duly to give such notice to the Holder of any Security of any series designated for redemption in whole or in part, or any defect in the notice, shall not affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of any other Securities of such series or any other series. In the case of any redemption of Securities prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, the Company shall furnish the Trustee with an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with any such restriction. Each such notice of redemption shall specify the date fixed for redemption and the redemption price at which Securities of that series are to be redeemed, and shall state that payment of the redemption price of such Securities to be redeemed will be made at the office or agency of the Company in [_____], upon presentation and surrender of such Securities, that interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption will be paid as specified in said notice, that from and after said date interest will cease to accrue and that the redemption is for a sinking fund, if such is the case. If less than all the Securities of a series are to be redeemed, the notice to the Holders of Securities of that series to be redeemed in whole or in part shall specify the particular Securities to be so redeemed. In case any Security is to be redeemed in part only, the notice that relates to such Security shall state the portion of the principal amount thereof to be redeemed, and shall state that on and after the redemption date, upon surrender of such Security, a new Security or Securities of such series in principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion thereof will be issued.

(b) If less than all the Securities of a series are to be redeemed, the Company shall give the Trustee at least 45 days' notice in advance of the date fixed for redemption as to the aggregate principal amount of Securities of the series to be redeemed, and thereupon the Trustee shall select, by lot or in such other manner as it shall deem appropriate and fair in its discretion and that may provide for the selection of a portion or portions (equal to one thousand U.S. dollars (\$1,000) or any integral multiple thereof) of the principal amount of such Securities of a denomination larger than \$1,000, the Securities to be redeemed and shall thereafter promptly notify the Company in writing of the numbers of the Securities to be redeemed, in whole or in part. The Company may, if and whenever it shall so elect, by delivery of instructions signed on its behalf by its President or any Vice President, instruct the Trustee or any paying agent to call all or any part of the Securities of a particular series for redemption and to give notice of redemption in the manner set forth in this Section, such notice to be in the name of the Company or its own name as the Trustee or such paying agent as it may deem advisable. In any case in which notice of redemption is to be given by the Trustee or any such paying agent, the Company shall deliver or cause to be delivered to, or permit to remain with, the Trustee or such paying agent, as the case may be, such Security Register, transfer books or other records, or suitable copies or extracts therefrom, sufficient to enable the Trustee or such paying agent to give any notice by mail that may be required under the provisions of this Section.

SECTION 3.03 PAYMENT UPON REDEMPTION.

(a) If the giving of notice of redemption shall have been completed as above provided, the Securities or portions of Securities of the series to be redeemed specified in such notice shall become due and payable on the date and at the place stated in such notice at the applicable redemption price, together with interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption and interest on such Securities or portions of Securities shall cease to accrue on and after the date fixed for redemption, unless the Company shall default in the payment of such redemption price and accrued interest with respect to any such Security or portion thereof. On presentation and surrender of such Securities on or after the date fixed for redemption at the place of payment specified in the notice, said Securities shall be paid and redeemed at the applicable redemption price for such series, together with interest accrued thereon to the date fixed for redemption (but if the date fixed for redemption is an Interest Payment Date, the interest installment payable on such date shall be payable to the registered Holder at the close of business on the applicable record date pursuant to Section 2.03).

(b) Upon presentation of any Security of such series that is to be redeemed in part only, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and the office or agency where the Security is presented shall deliver to the Holder thereof, at the expense of the Company, a new Security of the same series of authorized denominations in principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion of the Security so presented.

SECTION 3.04 SINKING FUND.

The provisions of Sections 3.04, 3.05 and 3.06 shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of Securities of a series, except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 2.01 for Securities of such series. The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as a “mandatory sinking fund payment,” and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as an “optional sinking fund payment”. If provided for by the terms of Securities of any series, the cash amount of any sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 3.05. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities of any series as provided for by the terms of Securities of such series.

SECTION 3.05 SATISFACTION OF SINKING FUND PAYMENTS WITH SECURITIES.

The Company,

(1) may deliver Outstanding Securities of a series (other than any Securities previously called for redemption) and

(2) may apply as a credit Securities of a series that have been redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Securities or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, in each case in satisfaction of all or any part of any sinking fund payment with respect to the Securities of such series required to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities as provided for by the terms of such series, provided that such Securities have not been previously so credited. Such Securities shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustee at the redemption price specified in such Securities for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly.

SECTION 3.06 REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES FOR SINKING FUND.

Not less than 45 days prior to each sinking fund payment date for any series of Securities, the Company will deliver to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing sinking fund payment for that series pursuant to the terms of the series, the portion thereof, if any, that is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting Securities of that series pursuant to Section 3.05 and the basis for such credit and will, together with such Officers' Certificate, deliver to the Trustee any Securities to be so delivered. Not less than 30 days before each such sinking fund payment date the Trustee shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 3.02 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 3.02. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Section 3.03.

ARTICLE IV COVENANTS

SECTION 4.01 PAYMENT OF PRINCIPAL, PREMIUM AND INTEREST.

The Company will duly and punctually pay or cause to be paid the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Securities of each series at the time and place and in the manner provided herein and established with respect to such Securities.

SECTION 4.02 MAINTENANCE OF OFFICE OR AGENCY.

So long as any series of the Securities remain Outstanding, the Company agrees to maintain an office or agency in [_____], with respect to each such series and at such other location or locations as may be designated as provided in this Section 4.02, where (i) Securities of that series may be presented for payment, (ii) Securities of that series may be presented as herein above authorized for registration of transfer and exchange, and (iii) notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of that series and this Indenture may be given or served, such designation to continue with respect to such office or agency until the Company shall, by written notice signed by its President or a Vice President and delivered to the Trustee, designate some other office or agency in [_____] for such purposes or any of them. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee as its agent to receive all such presentations, notices and demands.

The Company may also from time to time designate one or more other offices or agencies where the Securities of one or more series may be presented or surrendered for any or all such purposes and may from time to time rescind such designations; provided, however, that no such designation or rescission shall in any manner relieve the Company of its obligation to maintain an office or agency in [_____] for Securities of any series for such purposes. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of any such designation or rescission and of any change in the location of any such other office or agency.

SECTION 4.03 PAYING AGENTS.

(a) If the Company shall appoint one or more paying agents for all or any series of the Securities, other than the Trustee, the Company will cause each such paying agent to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section:

(1) that it will hold all sums held by it as such agent for the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of that series (whether such sums have been paid to it by the Company or by any other obligor of such Securities) in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto;

(2) that it will give the Trustee notice of any failure by the Company (or by any other obligor of such Securities) to make any payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of that series when the same shall be due and payable;

(3) that it will, at any time during the continuance of any failure referred to in the preceding paragraph (a)(2) above, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums so held in trust by such paying agent; and

(4) that it will perform all other duties of paying agent as set forth in this Indenture.

(b) If the Company shall act as its own paying agent with respect to any series of the Securities, it will on or before each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on Securities of that series, set aside, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum sufficient to pay such principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due on Securities of that series until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided and will promptly notify the Trustee of such action, or any failure (by it or any other obligor on such Securities) to take such action. Whenever the Company shall have one or more paying agents for any series of Securities, it will, prior to each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on any Securities of that series, deposit with the paying agent a sum sufficient to pay the principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due, such sum to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such principal, premium or interest, and (unless such paying agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of this action or failure so to act.

(c) Notwithstanding anything in this Section to the contrary,

(1) the agreement to hold sums in trust as provided in this Section is subject to the provisions of Section 11.05, and

(2) the Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or direct any paying agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums held in trust by the Company or such paying agent, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same terms and conditions as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such paying agent; and, upon such payment by any paying agent to the Trustee, such paying agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such money.

SECTION 4.04 APPOINTMENT TO FILL VACANCY IN OFFICE OF TRUSTEE.

The Company, whenever necessary to avoid or fill a vacancy in the office of Trustee, will appoint, in the manner provided in Section 7.11, a Trustee, so that there shall at all times be a Trustee hereunder.

SECTION 4.05 COMPLIANCE WITH CONSOLIDATION PROVISIONS.

The Company will not, while any of the Securities remain Outstanding, consolidate with or merge into any other Person, in either case where the Company is not the survivor of such transaction, or sell, convey, transfer or otherwise dispose of its property as an entirety or substantially as an entirety, to any other Person unless the provisions of Article X hereof are complied with.

SECTION 4.06 STATEMENT BY OFFICERS AS TO DEFAULT.

The Company will deliver to the Trustee, within 120 days after the end of each fiscal year of the Company, an Officers' Certificate, stating whether or not to the best knowledge of the signer thereof the Company is in default in the performance and observance of any of the terms, provisions and conditions of this Indenture (without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice provided hereunder) and, if the Company shall be in default, specifying all such defaults and the nature and status thereof of which such signer may have knowledge.

ARTICLE V SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE

SECTION 5.01 COMPANY TO FURNISH TRUSTEE NAMES AND ADDRESSES OF SECURITYHOLDERS.

The Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee:

(1) not more than 15 days after each regular record date (as defined in Section 2.03) a list, in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of the Holders of each series of Securities as of such regular record date, provided that the Company shall not be obligated to furnish or cause to furnish such list at any time that the list shall not differ in any respect from the most recent list furnished to the Trustee by the Company; and

(2) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished; provided, however, that, in either case, no such list need be furnished for any series for which the Trustee shall be the Security Registrar.

SECTION 5.02 PRESERVATION OF INFORMATION; COMMUNICATIONS WITH SECURITYHOLDERS.

(a) The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, all information as to the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities contained in the most recent list furnished to it as provided in Section 5.01 and as to the names and addresses of Holders of Securities received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar (if acting in such capacity).

(b) The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in Section 5.01 upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

(c) Securityholders may communicate as provided in Section 312(b) of the Trust Indenture Act with other Securityholders with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under the Securities.

SECTION 5.03 REPORTS BY THE COMPANY.

(a) The Company covenants and agrees to file with the Trustee, within 15 days after the Company has filed the same with the Commission, copies of the annual reports and of the information, documents and other reports (or copies of such portions of any of the foregoing as the Commission may from time to time by rules and regulations prescribe) that the Company may be required to file with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Exchange Act; or, if the Company is not required to file information, documents or reports pursuant to either of such sections, then to file with the Trustee and the Commission, in accordance with the rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission, such of the supplementary and periodic information, documents and reports that may be required pursuant to Section 13 of the Exchange Act, in respect of a security listed and registered on a national securities exchange as may be prescribed from time to time in such rules and regulations.

(b) The Company covenants and agrees to file with the Trustee and the Commission, in accordance with the rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission, such additional information, documents and reports with respect to compliance by the Company with the conditions and covenants provided for in this Indenture as may be required from time to time by such rules and regulations.

(c) The Company covenants and agrees to transmit by mail, first class postage prepaid, or reputable overnight delivery service that provides for evidence of receipt, to the Securityholders, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register, within 30 days after the filing thereof with the Trustee, such summaries of any information, documents and reports required to be filed by the Company pursuant to subsections (a) and (b) of this Section as may be required by rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission.

(d) Delivery of reports, information and documents to the Trustee under this Section 5.03 is for informational purposes only and the Trustee's receipt of the foregoing shall not constitute constructive notice of any information contained therein or determinable from information contained therein, including the Company's compliance with any of its respective covenants hereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on Officers' Certificates, except as otherwise provided herein).

SECTION 5.04 REPORTS BY THE TRUSTEE.

(a) On or before July 15 in each year in which any of the Securities are Outstanding, the Trustee shall transmit by mail, first class postage prepaid, to the Securityholders, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register, a brief report dated as of the preceding May 15, if and to the extent required under Section 313(a) of the Trust Indenture Act.

(b) The Trustee shall comply with Section 313(b) and 313(c) of the Trust Indenture Act.

(c) A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to Securityholders, be filed by the Trustee with the Company, with each stock exchange upon which any Securities are listed (if so listed) and also with the Commission. The Company agrees to notify the Trustee when any Securities become listed on any stock exchange.

ARTICLE VI REMEDIES OF THE TRUSTEE AND SECURITYHOLDERS ON EVENT OF DEFAULT

SECTION 6.01 EVENTS OF DEFAULT.

(a) Whenever used herein with respect to Securities of a particular series, "Event of Default" means any one or more of the following events that has occurred and is continuing (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether it shall be occasioned by the subordination provisions of Article XIV or other subordination provisions applicable to a series of Securities or be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body):

(1) the Company defaults in the payment of any installment of interest upon any of the Securities of that series, as and when the same shall become due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 90 days; provided, however, that a valid extension of an interest payment period by the Company in accordance with the terms of any indenture supplemental hereto shall not constitute a default in the payment of interest for this purpose;

(2) the Company defaults in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any of the Securities of that series as and when the same shall become due and payable whether at maturity, upon redemption, by declaration or otherwise, or in any payment required by any sinking or analogous fund established with respect to that series; provided, however, that a valid extension of the maturity of such Securities in accordance with the terms of any indenture supplemental hereto shall not constitute a default in the payment of principal or premium, if any;

(3) the Company fails to observe or perform any other of its covenants or agreements with respect to that series contained in this Indenture or otherwise established with respect to that series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof (other than a covenant or agreement that has been expressly included in this Indenture solely for the benefit of one or more series of Securities other than such series) for a period of 90 days after the date on which written notice of such failure, requiring the same to be remedied and stating that such notice is a "Notice of Default" hereunder, shall have been given to the Company by the Trustee, by registered or certified mail, or to the Company and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Securities of that series at the time Outstanding;

(4) the Company pursuant to or within the meaning of any Bankruptcy Law

- (i) commences a voluntary case,
- (ii) consents to the entry of an order for relief against it in an involuntary case,
- (iii) consents to the appointment of a Custodian of it or for all or substantially all of its property, or
- (iv) makes a general assignment for the benefit of its creditors; or

(5) a court of competent jurisdiction enters an order under any Bankruptcy Law that

- (i) is for relief against the Company in an involuntary case,
- (ii) appoints a Custodian of the Company for all or substantially all of its property, or
- (iii) orders the liquidation of the Company, and the order remains unstayed and in effect for 90 days.

(b) In each and every such case, unless the principal of all the Securities of that series shall have already become due and payable, either the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series then Outstanding hereunder, by notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by such Securityholders), may declare the principal of all the Securities of that series to be due and payable immediately, and upon any such declaration the same shall become and shall be immediately due and payable, notwithstanding anything contained in this Indenture or in the Securities of that series or established with respect to that series pursuant to Section 2.01 to the contrary.

(c) At any time after the principal of the Securities of that series shall have been so declared due and payable, and before any judgment or decree for the payment of the moneys due shall have been obtained or entered as hereinafter provided, the Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series then Outstanding hereunder, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if:

(1) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay all matured installments of interest upon all the Securities of that series and the principal of (and premium, if any, on) any and all Securities of that series that shall have become due otherwise than by acceleration (with interest upon such principal and premium, if any, and, to the extent that such payment is enforceable under applicable law, upon overdue installments of interest, at the rate per annum expressed in the Securities of that series to the date of such payment or deposit) and the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.07, and

(2) any and all Events of Default under the Indenture with respect to such series, other than the nonpayment of principal on Securities of that series that shall not have become due by their terms, shall have been remedied or waived as provided in Section 6.06. No such rescission and annulment shall extend to or shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

(d) In case the Trustee shall have proceeded to enforce any right with respect to Securities of that series under this Indenture and such proceedings shall have been discontinued or abandoned because of such rescission or annulment or for any other reason or shall have been determined adversely to the Trustee, then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceedings, the Company, and the Trustee shall be restored respectively to their former positions and rights hereunder, and all rights, remedies and powers of the Company and the Trustee shall continue as though no such proceedings had been taken.

SECTION 6.02 COLLECTION OF INDEBTEDNESS AND SUITS FOR ENFORCEMENT BY TRUSTEE.

(a) The Company covenants that

(1) in case it shall default in the payment of any installment of interest on any of the Securities of a series, as and when the same shall have become due and payable, and such default shall have continued for a period of 90 days, or

(2) in case it shall default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any of the Securities of a series when the same shall have become due and payable, whether upon maturity of the Securities of a series or upon redemption or upon declaration, pursuant to any sinking or analogous fund established with respect to that series or otherwise, then, upon demand of the Trustee, the Company will pay to the Trustee, for the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of that series, the whole amount that then shall have become due and payable on all such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) or interest, or both, as the case may be, with interest upon the overdue principal (and premium, if any) and (to the extent that payment of such interest is enforceable under applicable law) upon overdue installments of interest at the rate per annum expressed in the Securities of that series; and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, and the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.07.

(b) If the Company shall fail to pay such amounts forthwith upon such demand, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, shall be entitled and empowered to institute any action or proceedings at law or in equity for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, and may prosecute any such action or proceeding to judgment or final decree, and may enforce any such judgment or final decree against the Company or other obligor upon the Securities of that series and collect the moneys adjudged or decreed to be payable in the manner provided by law out of the property of the Company or other obligor upon the Securities of that series, wherever situated.

(c) In case of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation, bankruptcy, reorganization, readjustment, arrangement, composition or judicial proceedings affecting the Company, or its creditors or property, the Trustee shall have power to intervene in such proceedings and take any action therein that may be permitted by the court and shall (except as may be otherwise provided by law) be entitled to file such proofs of claim and other papers and documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee and of the Holders of Securities of such series allowed for the entire amount due and payable by the Company under the Indenture at the date of institution of such proceedings and for any additional amount that may become due and payable by the Company after such date, and to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claim, and to distribute the same after the deduction of the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.07; and any receiver, assignee or trustee in bankruptcy or reorganization is hereby authorized by each of the Holders of Securities of such series to make such payments to the Trustee, and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to such Securityholders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due it under Section 7.07.

(d) All rights of action and of asserting claims under this Indenture, or under any of the terms established with respect to Securities of that series, may be enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of such Securities, or the production thereof at any trial or other proceeding relative thereto, and any such suit or proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for payment to the Trustee of any amounts due under Section 7.07, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities of such series. In case of an Event of Default hereunder, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce the rights vested in it by this Indenture by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any of such rights, either at law or in equity or in bankruptcy or otherwise, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement contained in the Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted in this Indenture, or to enforce any other legal or equitable right vested in the Trustee by this Indenture or by law. Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Securityholder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities of that series or the rights of any Holder thereof or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Securityholder in any such proceeding.

SECTION 6.03 APPLICATION OF MONEYS COLLECTED.

Any moneys collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article with respect to a particular series of Securities and any money or other property distributable in respect of the company's obligations under this Indenture after an Event of Default shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such moneys on account of principal (or premium, if any) or interest, upon presentation of the Securities of that series, and notation thereon of the payment, if only partially paid, and upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

FIRST: To the payment of costs and expenses of collection and of all amounts payable to the Trustee (including any predecessor Trustee) under Section 7.07;

SECOND: To the payment of all Senior Indebtedness of the Company if and to the extent required by Article XIV or other subordination provisions applicable with respect to such series; and

THIRD: To the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid upon Securities of such series for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, respectively.

SECTION 6.04 LIMITATION ON SUITS.

No Holder of any Security of any series shall have any right by virtue or by availing of any provision of this Indenture to institute any suit, action or proceeding in equity or at law upon or under or with respect to this Indenture or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless

(1) such Holder previously shall have given to the Trustee written notice of an Event of Default and of the continuance thereof with respect to the Securities of such series specifying such Event of Default, as hereinbefore provided;

(2) the Holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series then Outstanding shall have made written request upon the Trustee to institute such action, suit or proceeding in its own name as trustee hereunder;

(3) such Holder or Holders shall have offered to the Trustee such reasonable indemnity as it may require against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred therein or thereby; and

(4) the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity, shall have failed to institute any such action, suit or proceeding and

(5) during such 60 day period, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Securities of that series do not give the Trustee a direction inconsistent with the request.

Notwithstanding anything contained herein to the contrary, the right of any Holder of any Security to receive payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on such Security, as therein provided, on the respective due dates expressed in such Security (or in the case of redemption, on the redemption date), or to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after such respective dates or redemption date, shall not be impaired or affected without the consent of such Holder and by accepting a Security hereunder it is expressly understood, intended and covenanted by the taker and Holder of every Security of such series with every other such taker and Holder and the Trustee, that no one or more Holders of Securities of such series shall have any right in any manner whatsoever by virtue or by availing of any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of the Holders of any other of such Securities, or to obtain or seek to obtain priority over or preference to any other such Holder, or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal, ratable and common benefit of all Holders of Securities of such series. For the protection and enforcement of the provisions of this Section, each and every Securityholder and the Trustee shall be entitled to such relief as can be given either at law or in equity.

SECTION 6.05 RIGHTS AND REMEDIES CUMULATIVE; DELAY OR OMISSION NOT WAIVER.

(a) Except as otherwise provided in Section 2.07, all powers and remedies given by this Article to the Trustee or to the Securityholders shall, to the extent permitted by law, be deemed cumulative and not exclusive of any other powers and remedies available to the Trustee or the Holders of the Securities, by judicial proceedings or otherwise, to enforce the performance or observance of the covenants and agreements contained in this Indenture or otherwise established with respect to such Securities.

(b) No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Holder of any of the Securities to exercise any right or power accruing upon any Event of Default occurring and continuing as aforesaid shall impair any such right or power, or shall be construed to be a waiver of any such default or on acquiescence therein; and, subject to the provisions of Section 6.04, every power and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or the Securityholders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as shall be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Securityholders.

SECTION 6.06 CONTROL BY SECURITYHOLDERS.

The Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding, determined in accordance with Section 8.01, shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee with respect to such series; provided, however, that such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture or be unduly prejudicial to the rights of Holders of Securities of any other series at the time Outstanding determined in accordance with Section 8.01. Subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, the Trustee shall have the right to decline to follow any such direction if the Trustee in good faith shall, by a Responsible Officer or Officers of the Trustee, determine that the proceeding so directed would involve the Trustee in personal liability. The Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding affected thereby, determined in accordance with Section 8.01, may on behalf of the holders of all of the Securities of such series waive any past default in the performance of any of the covenants contained herein or established pursuant to Section 2.01 with respect to such series and its consequences, except a default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on, any of the Securities of that series as and when the same shall become due by the terms of such Securities otherwise than by acceleration (unless such default has been cured and a sum sufficient to pay all matured installments of interest and principal and any premium has been deposited with the Trustee (in accordance with Section 6.01(c)) or in respect of a covenant or provision hereof which under Article IX cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected. Upon any such waiver, the default covered thereby shall be deemed to be cured for all purposes of this Indenture and the Company, the Trustee and the Holders of the Securities of such series shall be restored to their former positions and rights hereunder, respectively; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any right consequent thereon.

SECTION 6.07 UNDERTAKING TO PAY COSTS.

All parties to this Indenture agree, and each Holder of any Securities by such Holder's acceptance thereof shall be deemed to have agreed, that any court may in its discretion require, in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken or omitted by it as Trustee, the filing by any party litigant in such suit of an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and that such court may in its discretion assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees, against any party litigant in such suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by such party litigant; but the provisions of this Section shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Trustee, to any suit instituted by any Securityholder, or group of Securityholders, holding more than 10% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, or to any suit instituted by any Securityholder for the enforcement of the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security of such series, on or after the respective due dates expressed in such Security or established pursuant to this Indenture.

**ARTICLE VII
CONCERNING THE TRUSTEE**

SECTION 7.01 CERTAIN DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF TRUSTEE.

(a) The Trustee, prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series and after the curing of all Events of Default with respect to the Securities of that series that may have occurred, shall undertake to perform with respect to the Securities of such series such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee. In case an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series has occurred (that has not been cured or waived), the Trustee shall exercise with respect to Securities of that series such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent man would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his own affairs.

(b) No provision of this Indenture shall be construed to relieve the Trustee from liability for its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act, or its own willful misconduct, except that:

(1) prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series and after the curing or waiving of all such Events of Default with respect to that series that may have occurred: the duties and obligations of the Trustee shall with respect to the Securities of such series be determined solely by the express provisions of this Indenture, and the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to the Securities of such series except for the performance of such duties and obligations as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and in the absence of bad faith on the part of the Trustee, the Trustee may with respect to the Securities of such series conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon any certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; but in the case of any such certificates or opinions that by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform to the requirement of this Indenture;

(2) the Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer or Responsible Officers of the Trustee, unless it shall be proved that the Trustee, was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts;

(3) the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith in accordance with the direction of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee under this Indenture with respect to the Securities of that series; and

(4) this Subsection shall not be construed to limit the effect of Subsection (c) of this Section 7.01.

(c) None of the provisions contained in this Indenture shall require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur any financial liability in the performance of any of its duties hereunder, or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers, it shall have reasonable grounds for believing that repayment of such funds or adequate indemnity against such risk or liability is not reasonably assured to it.

(d) The Trustee shall not be deemed to have notice of or be charged with having knowledge of any Default or Event of Default with respect to any series of Securities, except Events of Default under Section 6.01(a)(1) or (a)(2), if and so long as it is acting as paying agent with respect to the Securities of such series, unless written notice of such Default Event or Event of Default, as the case may be, is received by the Trustee at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee from the Company or any Holder of Securities of such series, and such notice references the Securities and this Indenture.

(e) Whether or not expressly so provided, every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct or affecting the liability of or affording protection to the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of this Section 7.01.

SECTION 7.02 NOTICE OF DEFAULTS.

If a Default occurs hereunder with respect to Securities of any series and is known to a Responsible Officer of the Trustee, the Trustee shall give the Holders of Securities of such series notice of such Default as and to the extent provided by the Trust Indenture Act; provided, however, that in the case of any Default of the character specified in clause (3) of Section 6.01(a) with respect to Securities of such series, no such notice to Holders shall be given until at least 30 days after the occurrence thereof.

SECTION 7.03 CERTAIN RIGHTS OF TRUSTEE.

Except as otherwise provided in Section 7.01:

(a) The Trustee may conclusively rely and shall be fully protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, consent, order, approval, bond, security or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;

(b) Any request, direction, order or demand of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution or an instrument signed in the name of the Company, by the President or any Vice President and by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary or the Treasurer or an Assistant Treasurer thereof (unless other evidence in respect thereof is specifically prescribed herein);

(c) The Trustee may consult with counsel and the advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken or suffered or omitted hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon;

(d) The Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request, order or direction of any of the Securityholders, pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture, unless such Securityholders shall have offered to the Trustee reasonable security or indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities that may be incurred therein or thereby; nothing contained herein shall, however, relieve the Trustee of the obligation, upon the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to a series of the Securities (that has not been cured or waived) to exercise with respect to Securities of that series such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and to use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent man would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his own affairs;

(e) The Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith and believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion or rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture;

(f) The Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, consent, order, approval, bond, security, or other papers or documents; and

(g) The Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder.

(h) whenever in the administration of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking, suffering or omitting any action hereunder, the Trustee (unless other evidence be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of bad faith on its part, conclusively rely upon an Officers' Certificate;

(i) the rights, privileges, protections, immunities and benefits given to the Trustee, including, without limitation, its right to be indemnified, are extended to, and shall be enforceable by, the Trustee in each of its capacities hereunder, and each agent, custodian and other Person employed to act hereunder;

(j) the Trustee may request that the Company deliver an Officers' Certificate setting forth the names of individuals and/or titles of officers authorized at such time to take specified actions pursuant to this Indenture;

(k) the permissive right of the Trustee to take or refrain from taking any actions enumerated in this Indenture shall not be construed as a duty;

(l) anything in this Indenture notwithstanding, in no event shall the Trustee be liable for special, indirect, punitive or consequential loss or damage of any kind whatsoever (including but not limited to loss of profit), even if the Company or Guarantor has been advised as to the likelihood of such loss or damage and regardless of the form of action;

(m) the Trustee shall not be responsible or liable for any failure or delay in the performance of its obligations under this Indenture arising out of or caused, directly or indirectly, by circumstances beyond its reasonable control, including, without limitation, acts of God; earthquakes; fire; flood; terrorism; wars and other military disturbances; sabotage; epidemics; riots; interruptions; loss or malfunctions of utilities, computer (hardware or software) or communication services; accidents; labor disputes; acts of civil or military authority and governmental action.

SECTION 7.04 TRUSTEE NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR RECITALS OR ISSUANCE OR SECURITIES.

(a) The recitals contained herein and in the Securities shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and the Trustee assumes no responsibility for the correctness of the same.

(b) The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities.

(c) The Trustee shall not be accountable for the use or application by the Company of any of the Securities or of the proceeds of such Securities, or for the use or application of any moneys paid over by the Trustee in accordance with any provision of this Indenture or established pursuant to Section 2.01, or for the use or application of any moneys received by any paying agent other than the Trustee.

SECTION 7.05 MAY HOLD SECURITIES.

The Trustee or any paying agent or Security Registrar, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee, paying agent or Security Registrar.

SECTION 7.06 MONEYS HELD IN TRUST.

Subject to the provisions of Section 11.05, all moneys received by the Trustee shall, until used or applied as herein provided, be held in trust for the purposes for which they were received, but need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest on any moneys received by it hereunder except such as it may agree with the Company to pay thereon.

SECTION 7.07 COMPENSATION AND REIMBURSEMENT.

(a) The Company covenants and agrees to pay to the Trustee, and the Trustee shall be entitled to, such reasonable compensation (which shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust), as the Company, and the Trustee may from time to time agree in writing, for all services rendered by it in the execution of the trusts hereby created and in the exercise and performance of any of the powers and duties hereunder of the Trustee, and, except as otherwise expressly provided herein, the Company will pay or reimburse the Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee in accordance with any of the provisions of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its counsel and of all Persons not regularly in its employ) except any such expense, disbursement or advance as may arise from its gross negligence or willful misconduct. The Company also covenants to indemnify the Trustee (and its officers, agents, directors and employees) for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, damage, claims liability or expense incurred without gross negligence or willful misconduct on the part of the Trustee and arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of this trust, including the costs and expenses of defending itself against any claim whether asserted by the Company, any Securityholder or any other Person or liability including the compensation and expense of counsel in connection with the exercise or performance of any of its powers or duties hereunder.

(b) The obligations of the Company under this Section to compensate and indemnify the Trustee and to pay or reimburse the Trustee for expenses, disbursements and advances shall constitute additional indebtedness hereunder. Such additional indebtedness shall be secured by a lien prior to that of the Securities upon all property and funds held or collected by the Trustee as such, except funds held in trust for the benefit of the Holders of particular Securities.

(c) To the extent permitted by law, any compensation due or expense incurred by the Trustee after a default specified in or pursuant to Section 6.01 is intended to constitute an expense of administration under any then applicable bankruptcy or insolvency law. "Trustee" for purposes of this Section 7.07 shall include any predecessor Trustee but the negligence or bad faith of any Trustee shall not affect the rights of any other Trustee under this Section 7.07.

(d) The provisions of this Section 7.07 shall survive the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, the termination of this Indenture for any reason, or the earlier resignation or removal of the Trustee and shall apply with equal force and effect to the Trustee in its capacity as Authenticating Agent, Security Registrar or paying agent.

SECTION 7.08 RELIANCE ON OFFICERS' CERTIFICATE.

Except as otherwise provided in Section 7.01, whenever in the administration of the provisions of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it necessary or desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking or suffering or omitting to take any action hereunder, such matter (unless other evidence in respect thereof be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee, be deemed to be conclusively proved and established by an Officers' Certificate delivered to the Trustee and such certificate, in the absence of negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee, shall be full warranty to the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted to be taken by it under the provisions of this Indenture upon the faith thereof.

SECTION 7.09 DISQUALIFICATION; CONFLICTING INTERESTS.

If the Trustee has or shall acquire any "conflicting interest" within the meaning of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee and the Company shall in all respects comply with the provisions of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act, subject to the penultimate paragraph thereof. For purposes of Section 310(b)(i) of the Trust Indenture Act and to the extent permitted thereby, the Trustee, in its capacity as trustee in respect of the Securities of any series, shall not be deemed to have a conflicting interest arising from its capacity as trustee in respect of the Securities of any other series.

SECTION 7.10 CORPORATE TRUSTEE REQUIRED; ELIGIBILITY.

There shall at all times be a Trustee with respect to the Securities issued hereunder which shall at all times be a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America or any State or Territory thereof or of the District of Columbia, or a corporation or other Person permitted to act as trustee by the Commission, authorized under such laws to exercise corporate trust powers, having a combined capital and surplus of at least fifty million U.S. dollars (\$50,000,000), and subject to supervision or examination by federal, state, territorial, or District of Columbia authority. If such corporation publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of the aforesaid supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such corporation shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. The Company may not, nor may any Person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with the Company, serve as Trustee. In case at any time the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in Section 7.11.

SECTION 7.11 RESIGNATION AND REMOVAL; APPOINTMENT OF SUCCESSOR.

(a) The Trustee or any successor hereafter appointed, may at any time resign with respect to the Securities of one or more series by giving written notice thereof to the Company and by transmitting notice of resignation by mail, first class postage prepaid, to the Securityholders of such series, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. Upon receiving such notice of resignation, the Company shall promptly appoint a successor trustee with respect to Securities of such series by written instrument, in duplicate, executed by order of the Board of Directors, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the resigning Trustee and one copy to the successor trustee. If no successor trustee shall have been so appointed and have accepted appointment within 30 days after the mailing of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor trustee with respect to Securities of such series, or any Securityholder of that series who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months may on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any such court for the appointment of a successor trustee. Such court may thereupon after such notice, if any, as it may deem proper and prescribe, appoint a successor trustee.

(b) In case at any time any one of the following shall occur:

(1) the Trustee shall fail to comply with the provisions of Section 7.09 after written request therefor by the Company or by any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months; or

(2) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of Section 7.10 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any such Securityholder; or

(3) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting, or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent, or commence a voluntary bankruptcy proceeding, or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or consented to, or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation, then, in any such case, the Company may remove the Trustee with respect to all Securities and appoint a successor trustee by written instrument, in duplicate, executed by order of the Board of Directors, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the Trustee so removed and one copy to the successor trustee, or, unless, in the case of a failure to comply with Section 7.09, the Trustee's duty to resign is stayed as provided in the penultimate paragraph of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act, any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months may, on behalf of that Holder and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee and the appointment of a successor trustee. Such court may thereupon after such notice, if any, as it may deem proper and prescribe, remove the Trustee and appoint a successor trustee.

(c) The Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding may at any time remove the Trustee with respect to such series by so notifying the Trustee and the Company and may appoint a successor Trustee for such series with the consent of the Company.

(d) Any resignation or removal of the Trustee and appointment of a successor trustee with respect to the Securities of a series pursuant to any of the provisions of this Section shall become effective upon acceptance of appointment by the successor trustee as provided in Section 7.12.

(e) Any successor trustee appointed pursuant to this Section may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more series or all of such series, and at any time there shall be only one Trustee with respect to the Securities of any particular series.

SECTION 7.12 ACCEPTANCE OF APPOINTMENT BY SUCCESSOR.

(a) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor trustee with respect to all Securities, every such successor trustee so appointed shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee; but, on the request of the Company or the successor trustee, such retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor trustee all the rights, powers, and trusts of the retiring Trustee and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder, subject nevertheless to the lien provided for in Section 7.07.

(b) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and each successor trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor trustee shall accept such appointment and which

(1) shall contain such provisions as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm to, and to vest in, each successor trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates,

(2) shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee, and

(3) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust, that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee and that no Trustee shall be responsible for any act or failure to act on the part of any other Trustee hereunder; and upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein, such retiring Trustee shall with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates have no further responsibility for the exercise of rights and powers or for the performance of the duties and obligations vested in the Trustee under this Indenture, and each such successor trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or any successor trustee, such retiring Trustee shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor trustee, to the extent contemplated by such supplemental indenture, the property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates, subject nevertheless to the lien provided for in Section 7.07.

(c) Upon request of any such successor trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor trustee all such rights, powers and trusts referred to in paragraph (a) or (b) of this Section, as the case may be.

(d) No successor trustee shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor trustee shall be qualified and eligible under this Article.

(e) Upon acceptance of appointment by a successor trustee as provided in this Section, the Company shall transmit notice of the succession of such trustee hereunder by mail, first class postage prepaid, to the Securityholders, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. If the Company fails to transmit such notice within ten days after acceptance of appointment by the successor trustee, the successor trustee shall cause such notice to be transmitted at the expense of the Company.

SECTION 7.13 MERGER, CONVERSION, CONSOLIDATION OR SUCCESSION TO BUSINESS.

Any Person into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any Person resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any Person succeeding to all or substantially all of the corporate trust business of the Trustee, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided that such Person shall be qualified under the provisions of Section 7.09 and eligible under the provisions of Section 7.10, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto, anything herein to the contrary notwithstanding. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by the Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities.

SECTION 7.14 PREFERENTIAL COLLECTION OF CLAIMS AGAINST THE COMPANY.

The Trustee shall comply with Section 311(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, excluding any creditor relationship described in Section 311(b) of the Trust Indenture Act. A Trustee who has resigned or been removed shall be subject to Section 311(a) of the Trust Indenture Act to the extent included therein.

ARTICLE VIII CONCERNING THE SECURITYHOLDERS

SECTION 8.01 EVIDENCE OF ACTION BY SECURITYHOLDERS.

Whenever in this Indenture it is provided that the Holders of a majority or specified percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series may take any action (including the making of any demand or request, the giving of any notice, consent or waiver or the taking of any other action), the fact that at the time of taking any such action the Holders of such majority or specified percentage of that series have joined therein may be evidenced by any instrument or any number of instruments of similar tenor executed by such Holders of Securities of that series in Person or by agent or proxy appointed in writing. If the Company shall solicit from the Securityholders of any series any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, the Company may, at its option, as evidenced by an Officers' Certificate, fix in advance a record date for such series for the determination of Securityholders entitled to give such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, but the Company shall have no obligation to do so. If such a record date is fixed, such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action may be given before or after the record date, but only the Securityholders of record at the close of business on the record date shall be deemed to be Securityholders for the purposes of determining whether Securityholders of the requisite proportion of Outstanding Securities of that series have authorized or agreed or consented to such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, and for that purpose the Outstanding Securities of that series shall be computed as of the record date; provided, however, that no such authorization, agreement or consent by such Securityholders on the record date shall be deemed effective unless it shall become effective pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture not later than six months after the record date.

SECTION 8.02 PROOF OF EXECUTION BY SECURITYHOLDERS.

Subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, proof of the execution of any instrument by a Securityholder (such proof will not require notarization) or his agent or proxy and proof of the holding by any Person of any of the Securities shall be sufficient if made in the following manner:

- (a) The fact and date of the execution by any such Person of any instrument may be proved in any reasonable manner acceptable to the Trustee.
- (b) The ownership of Securities shall be proved by the Security Register of such Securities or by a certificate of the Security Registrar thereof.
- (c) The Trustee may require such additional proof of any matter referred to in this Section as it shall deem necessary.

SECTION 8.03 WHO MAY BE DEEMED OWNERS.

Prior to the due presentment for registration of transfer of any Security, the Company, the Trustee, any paying agent and any Security Registrar may deem and treat the Person in whose name such Security shall be registered upon the books of the Company as the absolute owner of such Security (whether or not such Security shall be overdue and notwithstanding any notice of ownership or writing thereon made by anyone other than the Security Registrar) for the purpose of receiving payment of or on account of the principal of (and premium, if any) and (subject to Section 2.03) interest on such Security and for all other purposes; and neither the Company nor the Trustee nor any paying agent nor any Security Registrar shall be affected by any notice to the contrary.

SECTION 8.04 CERTAIN SECURITIES OWNED BY COMPANY DISREGARDED.

In determining whether the Holders of the requisite aggregate principal amount of Securities of a particular series have concurred in any direction, consent or waiver under this Indenture, the Securities of that series that are owned by the Company or any other obligor on the Securities of that series or by any Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under common control with the Company or any other obligor on the Securities of that series shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding for the purpose of any such determination, except that for the purpose of determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying on any such direction, consent or waiver, only Securities of such series that a Responsible Officer of the Trustee actually knows are so owned shall be so disregarded. The Securities so owned that have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding for the purposes of this Section, if the pledgee shall establish to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not a Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with the Company or any such other obligor. In case of a dispute as to such right, any decision by the Trustee taken upon the advice of counsel shall be full protection to the Trustee.

SECTION 8.05 ACTIONS BINDING ON FUTURE SECURITYHOLDERS.

At any time prior to (but not after) the evidencing to the Trustee, as provided in Section 8.01, of the taking of any action by the Holders of the majority or percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series specified in this Indenture in connection with such action, any Holder of a Security of that series that is shown by the evidence to be included in the Securities the Holders of which have consented to such action may, by filing written notice with the Trustee, and upon proof of holding as provided in Section 8.02, revoke such action so far as concerns such Security. Except as aforesaid any such action taken by the Holder of any Security shall be conclusive and binding upon such Holder and upon all future Holders and owners of such Security, and of any Security issued in exchange therefor, on registration of transfer thereof or in place thereof, irrespective of whether or not any notation in regard thereto is made upon such Security. Any action taken by the Holders of the majority or percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series specified in this Indenture in connection with such action shall be conclusively binding upon the Company, the Trustee and the Holders of all the Securities of that series.

ARTICLE IX SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

SECTION 9.01 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITHOUT THE CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS.

In addition to any supplemental indenture otherwise authorized by this Indenture, the Company and the Trustee may from time to time and at any time enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto (which shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act as then in effect), without the consent of the Securityholders, for one or more of the following purposes:

- (1) to cure any ambiguity, defect, or inconsistency herein, in the Securities of any series;
- (2) to comply with Article X;
- (3) to provide for uncertificated Securities in addition to or in place of certificated Securities;
- (4) to add to the covenants of the Company for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such covenants are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such covenants are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series) or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company or to add any additional Events of Default for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such additional Events of Default are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such additional Events of Default are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series);
- (5) to add to, delete from, or revise the conditions, limitations, and restrictions on the authorized amount, terms, or purposes of issue, authentication, and delivery of Securities (prior to the issuance thereof), as herein set forth;

(6) to make any change that does not adversely affect the rights of any Securityholder in any material respect;

(7) to provide for the issuance of and establish the form and terms and conditions of the Securities of any series as provided in Section 2.01, to establish the form of any certifications required to be furnished pursuant to the terms of this Indenture or any series of Securities, or to add to the rights of the Holders of any series of Securities; or

(8) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, pursuant to the requirements of Section 7.12.

The Trustee is hereby authorized to join with the Company in the execution of any such supplemental indenture, and to make any further appropriate agreements and stipulations that may be therein contained, but the Trustee shall not be obligated to enter into any such supplemental indenture that affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

Any supplemental indenture authorized by the provisions of this Section may be executed by the Company and the Trustee without the consent of the Holders of any of the Securities at the time Outstanding, notwithstanding any of the provisions of Section 9.02.

SECTION 9.02 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITH CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS.

With the consent (evidenced as provided in Section 8.01) of the Holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of each series affected by such supplemental indenture or indentures at the time Outstanding, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee may from time to time and at any time enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto (which shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act as then in effect) for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of any supplemental indenture or of modifying in any manner not covered by Section 9.01 the rights of the Holders of the Securities of such series under this Indenture; provided, however, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the Holders of each Security then Outstanding and affected thereby:

(1) change the maturity of the principal of, or any installment of principal of or interest on, any Security, or reduce the principal amount thereof or the rate of interest thereon or any premium payable upon the redemption thereof, or reduce the amount of the principal of an Original Issue Discount Security or any other Security which would be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.01 or change the coin or currency in which any Security or any premium or interest thereon is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after the maturity thereof (or, in the case of redemption, on or after the redemption date); or

(2) reduce the percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, the consent of whose Holders is required for any such supplemental indenture, or the consent of whose Holders is required for any waiver of certain defaults hereunder and their consequences provided for in this Indenture;

(3) modify any of the provisions of this Section or Section 6.06 relating to waivers of default, except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby; provided, however, that this clause shall not be deemed to require the consent of any Holder with respect to changes in the references to "the Trustee" and concomitant changes in this Section, or the deletion of this proviso, in accordance with the requirements of Sections 7.12 and 9.01(8); or

(4) modify the provisions of this Indenture with respect to the subordination of such Security in a manner adverse to the holder thereof.

A supplemental indenture which changes or eliminates any covenant or other provision of this Indenture which has expressly been included solely for the benefit of one or more particular series of Securities, or which modifies the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series with respect to such covenant or other provision, shall be deemed not to affect the rights under this Indenture of the Holders of Securities of any other series. It shall not be necessary for the consent of the Securityholders of any series affected thereby under this Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such consent shall approve the substance thereof.

SECTION 9.03 EFFECT OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES.

Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Article or of Section 10.01, this Indenture shall, with respect to such series, be and be deemed to be modified and amended in accordance therewith and the respective rights, limitations of rights, obligations, duties and immunities under this Indenture of the Trustee, the Company and the Holders of Securities of the series affected thereby shall thereafter be determined, exercised and enforced hereunder subject in all respects to such modifications and amendments, and all the terms and conditions of any such supplemental indenture shall be and be deemed to be part of the terms and conditions of this Indenture for any and all purposes.

SECTION 9.04 SECURITIES AFFECTED BY SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES.

Securities of any series, affected by a supplemental indenture, authenticated and delivered after the execution of such supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Article or of Section 10.01, may bear a notation in form approved by the Company, provided such form meets the requirements of any exchange upon which such series may be listed, as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of that series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Board of Directors of the Company, to any modification of this Indenture contained in any such supplemental indenture may be prepared by the Company, authenticated by the Trustee and delivered in exchange for the Securities of that series then Outstanding.

SECTION 9.05 EXECUTION OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES.

Upon the request of the Company, accompanied by its Board Resolutions authorizing the execution of any supplemental indenture, and upon the filing with the Trustee of evidence of any requisite consents of Securityholders required to consent thereto as aforesaid, the Trustee shall join with the Company in the execution of such supplemental indenture unless such supplemental indenture affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise, in which case the Trustee may in its discretion but shall not be obligated to enter into such supplemental indenture. The Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, shall be entitled to receive an Opinion of Counsel as conclusive evidence that any supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article is authorized or permitted by, and conforms to, the terms of this Article and that it is proper for the Trustee under the provisions of this Article to join in the execution thereof.

Promptly after the execution by the Company and the Trustee of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Section, the Company shall transmit by mail, first class postage prepaid, a notice, setting forth in general terms the substance of such supplemental indenture, to the Securityholders of all series affected thereby as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. Any failure of the Company to mail such notice, or any defect therein, shall not, however, in any way impair or affect the validity of any such supplemental indenture.

ARTICLE X SUCCESSOR ENTITY

SECTION 10.01 COMPANY MAY CONSOLIDATE, ETC.

Nothing contained in this Indenture or in any of the Securities shall prevent any consolidation or merger of the Company with or into any other Person (whether or not affiliated with the Company) or successive consolidations or mergers in which the Company or its successor or successors shall be a party or parties, or shall prevent any sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition of the property of the Company or its successor or successors as an entirety, or substantially as an entirety, to any other Person (whether or not affiliated with the Company or its successor or successors) authorized to acquire and operate the same; provided, however, the Company hereby covenants and agrees that, upon any such consolidation or merger (in each case, if the Company is not the survivor of such transaction), sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition, the due and punctual payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on all of the Securities of all series in accordance with the terms of each series, according to their tenor and the due and punctual performance and observance of all the covenants and conditions of this Indenture or established with respect to each series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 to be kept or performed by the Company shall be expressly assumed, by supplemental indenture (which shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act, as then in effect) satisfactory in form to the Trustee executed and delivered to the Trustee by the entity formed by such consolidation, or into which the Company shall have been merged, or by the entity which shall have acquired such property.

SECTION 10.02 SUCCESSOR ENTITY SUBSTITUTED.

(a) In case of any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition and upon the assumption by any successor entity by supplemental indenture, executed and delivered to the Trustee of the due and punctual payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on all of the Securities of all series Outstanding and the due and punctual performance of all of the covenants and conditions of this Indenture or established with respect to each series of the Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 to be performed by the Company, such successor entity shall succeed to and be substituted for the Company with the same effect as if it had been named as the Company herein, and thereupon the predecessor corporation, except in the case of a lease, shall be relieved of all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities.

(b) In case of any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition such changes in phraseology and form (but not in substance) may be made in the Securities thereafter to be issued as may be appropriate.

(c) Nothing contained in this Article shall require any action by the Company in the case of a consolidation or merger of any Person into the Company where the Company is the survivor of such transaction, or the acquisition by the Company, by purchase or otherwise, of all or any part of the property of any other Person (whether or not affiliated with the Company).

SECTION 10.03 EVIDENCE OF CONSOLIDATION, ETC. TO TRUSTEE.

The Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, shall be entitled to receive an Opinion of Counsel and an Officers' Certificate as conclusive evidence that any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition, and any such assumption, comply with the provisions of this Article.

ARTICLE XI SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE; DEFEASANCE

SECTION 11.01 SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE.

This Indenture will be discharged and will cease to be of further effect with respect to a series of Securities (except as to any surviving rights of registration of transfer or exchange of such series of Securities herein expressly provided for), and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to such series, when:

(1) either (A) all Securities of that series theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than (i) any Securities that shall have been destroyed, lost or stolen and that shall have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 2.07 and (ii) Securities for whose payment money or noncallable Governmental Obligations have theretofore been deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereafter repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in Section 11.05) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or (B) all Securities of such series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation (i) have become due and payable, or (ii) will by their terms become due and payable within one year, or (iii) are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption, and the Company shall deposit or cause to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust for the purpose (x) moneys in an amount, or (y) noncallable Governmental Obligations the scheduled principal of and interest on which in accordance with their terms will provide, not later than the due date of any payment, money in an amount, or (z) a combination thereof, sufficient, in the case of (y) or (z), in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay and discharge, at maturity or upon redemption, all Securities of that series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, including principal (and premium, if any) and interest due or to become due to such date of maturity or date fixed for redemption, as the case may be;

(2) the Company has paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable hereunder with respect to such series by the Company; and

(3) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all the conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to such series of Securities have been complied with. Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to a series of Securities, the obligations of the Trustee under Section 7.07 and, if money shall have been deposited with the Trustee pursuant to subclause (y) of clause (1) of this Section, the obligations of the Trustee under Sections 11.03 and 11.05 shall survive.

SECTION 11.02 DEFEASANCE.

The Company may, at its option and at any time (including notwithstanding the exercise by the Company of a Covenant Defeasance (as defined herein)), elect to have its obligations discharged with respect to a series of the Securities ("Legal Defeasance"). Such Legal Defeasance means that the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by such series of Securities, except for (a) the rights of Holders to receive payments in respect of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Securities when such payments are due solely from the trust fund described in this Section, (b) the Company's obligations with respect to such series of Securities concerning issuing temporary Securities, registration of transfer or exchange of such series of Securities, mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities of such series and the maintenance of an office or agency for payments, (c) the rights, powers, trust, duties and immunities of the Trustee and the Company's obligations in connection therewith and (d) the Legal Defeasance provisions of this Indenture. In addition, the Company may, at its option and at any time, elect to have the obligations of the Company released with respect to covenants provided with respect to such series of Securities under Section 2.01(16), 9.01(4) and 9.01(7) of this Indenture ("Covenant Defeasance") and thereafter any omission to comply with such obligations shall not constitute a Default or Event of Default with respect to such series of Securities. In the event of Covenant Defeasance, those events described under Section 6.01(a) with respect to the foregoing covenants will no longer constitute an Event of Default with respect to such series of Securities.

In order to exercise either Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance:

(1) the Company must irrevocably deposit with the Trustee, in trust, for the benefit of the Holders of such series, (A) moneys in an amount, or (B) noncallable Governmental Obligations the scheduled principal of and interest on which in accordance with their terms will provide, not later than the due date of any payment, money in an amount, or (C) a combination thereof, sufficient, in the case of (B) or (C), in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay and discharge, at maturity or upon redemption, the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on such series of Securities on the stated date for payment thereof or on the applicable redemption date, as the case may be;

(2) in the case of Legal Defeasance, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel confirming that (A) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling or (B) since the date of this Indenture, there has been a change in the applicable federal income tax law, in either case to the effect that, and based thereon such Opinion of Counsel shall confirm that, the Holders of such series of Securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such Legal Defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such Legal Defeasance had not occurred;

(3) in the case of Covenant Defeasance, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel confirming that the Holders of such series of Securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such Covenant Defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such Covenant Defeasance had not occurred;

(4) no Default or Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit or insofar as Events of Default under clauses (4) and (5) of Section 6.01(a) with respect to the Securities of such series are concerned, at any time in the period ending on the 91st day after the date of deposit;

(5) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent provided for or relating to the Legal Defeasance or the Covenant Defeasance, as the case may be, have been complied with; and

(6) if such series of Securities are to be redeemed prior to final maturity (other than from mandatory sinking fund payments or analogous payments), notice of such redemption shall have been duly given pursuant to this Indenture or provision therefor satisfactory to the Trustee shall have been made.

SECTION 11.03 DEPOSITED MONEYS TO BE HELD IN TRUST.

All moneys or Governmental Obligations deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Sections 11.01 or 11.02 shall be held in trust and shall be available for payment as due, either directly or through any paying agent (including the Company acting as its own paying agent), to the Holders of the particular series of Securities for the payment or redemption of which such moneys or Governmental Obligations have been deposited with the Trustee. Funds held pursuant to this Section with respect to any series of Securities shall not be subject to the claims of the holders of Senior Indebtedness with respect to such series, provided, that at the time of the deposit of such funds with the Trustee under this Article, no event had occurred that would, under the subordination provisions related to such series, require that any payment to be made to the holders of such Securities be paid or paid over to the holders of such Senior Indebtedness.

SECTION 11.04 PAYMENT OF MONEYS HELD BY PAYING AGENTS.

In connection with the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture all moneys or Governmental Obligations then held by any paying agent under the provisions of this Indenture shall, upon demand of the Company, be paid to the Trustee and thereupon such paying agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such moneys or Governmental Obligations.

SECTION 11.05 REPAYMENT TO COMPANY.

Any moneys or Governmental Obligations deposited with any paying agent or the Trustee, or then held by the Company, in trust for payment of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of a particular series that are not applied but remain unclaimed by the Holders of such Securities for at least two years after the date upon which the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on such Securities shall have respectively become due and payable, shall be repaid to the Company on May 31 of each year or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and thereupon the paying agent and the Trustee shall be released from all further liability with respect to such moneys or Governmental Obligations, and the Holder of any of the Securities entitled to receive such payment shall thereafter, as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Company for the payment thereof.

ARTICLE XII IMMUNITY OF INCORPORATORS, STOCKHOLDERS, OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS

SECTION 12.01 NO RECOURSE.

No recourse under or upon any obligation, covenant or agreement of this Indenture, or of any Security, or for any claim based thereon or otherwise in respect thereof, shall be had against any incorporator, stockholder, officer or director, past, present or future as such, of the Company or of any predecessor or successor corporation, either directly or through the Company or any such predecessor or successor corporation, whether by virtue of any constitution, statute or rule of law, or by the enforcement of any assessment or penalty or otherwise; it being expressly understood that this Indenture and the obligations issued hereunder are solely corporate obligations, and that no such personal liability whatever shall attach to, or is or shall be incurred by, the incorporators, stockholders, officers or directors as such, of the Company or of any predecessor or successor corporation, or any of them, because of the creation of the indebtedness hereby authorized, or under or by reason of the obligations, covenants or agreements contained in this Indenture or in any of the Securities or implied therefrom; and that any and all such personal liability of every name and nature, either at common law or in equity or by constitution or statute, of, and any and all such rights and claims against, every such incorporator, stockholder, officer or director as such, because of the creation of the indebtedness hereby authorized, or under or by reason of the obligations, covenants or agreements contained in this Indenture or in any of the Securities or implied therefrom, are hereby expressly waived and released as a condition of, and as a consideration for, the execution of this Indenture and the issuance of such Securities.

**ARTICLE XIII
MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

SECTION 13.01 EFFECT ON SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS.

All the covenants, stipulations, promises and agreements in this Indenture contained by or on behalf of the Company shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

SECTION 13.02 ACTIONS BY SUCCESSOR.

Any act or proceeding by any provision of this Indenture authorized or required to be done or performed by any board, committee or officer of the Company shall and may be done and performed with like force and effect by the corresponding board, committee or officer of any corporation that shall at the time be the lawful successor of the Company.

SECTION 13.03 SURRENDER OF COMPANY POWERS.

The Company by instrument in writing executed by authority of its Board of Directors and delivered to the Trustee may surrender any of the powers reserved to the Company, and thereupon such power so surrendered shall terminate both as to the Company and as to any successor corporation.

SECTION 13.04 NOTICES.

Except as otherwise expressly provided herein, any notice or demand that by any provision of this Indenture is required or permitted to be given or served by the Trustee or by the Holders of Securities to or on the Company may be given or served by being deposited first class postage prepaid in a post-office letterbox addressed (until another address is filed in writing by the Company with the Trustee), as follows: 132 E. Putnam Ave, Floor 2W, Cos Cob, Connecticut 06807. Any notice, election, request or demand by the Company or any Securityholder to or upon the Trustee shall be deemed to have been sufficiently given or made, for all purposes, if given or made in writing at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee.

SECTION 13.05 GOVERNING LAW; WAIVER OF TRIAL BY JURY.

This Indenture and each Security shall be deemed to be a contract made under the internal laws of the State of [_____], and for all purposes shall be construed in accordance with the laws of said State.

EACH PARTY HERETO, AND EACH HOLDER OF A SECURITY BY ACCEPTANCE THEREOF, HEREBY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY RIGHT IT MAY HAVE TO A TRIAL BY JURY IN RESPECT OF ANY LITIGATION RELATING TO THE TRUSTEE DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY ARISING OUT OF, UNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS INDENTURE

SECTION 13.06 TREATMENT OF SECURITIES AS DEBT.

It is intended that the Securities will be treated as indebtedness and not as equity for federal income tax purposes. The provisions of this Indenture shall be interpreted to further this intention.

SECTION 13.07 COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES AND OPINIONS.

(a) Upon any application or demand by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any of the provisions of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate stating that all conditions precedent provided for in this Indenture relating to the proposed action have been complied with and an Opinion of Counsel stating that in the opinion of such counsel all such conditions precedent have been complied with, except that in the case of any such application or demand as to which the furnishing of such documents is specifically required by any provision of this Indenture relating to such particular application or demand, no additional certificate or opinion need be furnished.

(b) Each certificate or opinion provided for in this Indenture and delivered to the Trustee with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant in this Indenture shall include

(1) a statement that the Person making such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition;

(2) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based;

(3) a statement that, in the opinion of such Person, he has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and

(4) a statement as to whether or not, in the opinion of such Person, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

SECTION 13.08 PAYMENTS ON BUSINESS DAYS.

Except as provided pursuant to Section 2.01, by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, and as set forth in an Officers' Certificate or established in one or more indentures supplemental to this Indenture, in any case where the date of maturity of interest or principal of any Security or the date of redemption of any Security shall not be a Business Day, then payment of interest or principal (and premium, if any) may be made on the next succeeding Business Day with the same force and effect as if made on the nominal date of maturity or redemption, and no interest shall accrue for the period after such nominal date.

SECTION 13.09 CONFLICT WITH TRUST INDENTURE ACT.

If and to the extent that any provision of this Indenture limits, qualifies or conflicts with the duties imposed by Sections 310 to 317, inclusive, of the Trust Indenture Act, such imposed duties shall control. If any provision of this Indenture modifies or excludes any provision of the Trust Indenture Act which may be so modified or excluded, the latter provision shall be deemed to apply to this Indenture as so modified or to be excluded, as the case may be.

SECTION 13.10 COUNTERPARTS.

This Indenture may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be an original, but such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

SECTION 13.11 SEPARABILITY.

In case any one or more of the provisions contained in this Indenture or in the Securities of any series shall for any reason be held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable in any respect, such invalidity, illegality or unenforceability shall not affect any other provisions of this Indenture or of such Securities, but this Indenture and such Securities shall be construed as if such invalid or illegal or unenforceable provision had never been contained herein or therein.

SECTION 13.12 ASSIGNMENT.

The Company will have the right at all times to assign any of its rights or obligations under this Indenture to a direct or indirect wholly-owned Subsidiary of the Company, provided that, in the event of any such assignment, the Company, will remain liable for all such obligations. Subject to the foregoing, the Indenture is binding upon and inures to the benefit of the parties thereto and their respective successors and assigns. This Indenture may not otherwise be assigned by the parties thereto.

**ARTICLE XIV
SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES**

SECTION 14.01 SUBORDINATION TERMS.

The payment by the Company of the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on any series of Securities issued hereunder shall be subordinated to the extent set forth in an indenture supplemental hereto relating to such securities.

[signature page follows]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed all as of the day and year first above written.

CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT, INC.

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

_____, as **Trustee**

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

GRAUBARD MILLER
The Chrysler Building
405 Lexington Avenue
New York, New York 10174

September 28, 2018

Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc.
132 E. Putnam Avenue, Floor 2W
Cos Cob, Connecticut 06807

Re: Registration Statement

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as counsel for Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc., a Connecticut corporation ("Company"), in connection with the preparation of the Registration Statement on Form S-3 ("Registration Statement") filed by the Company with the Securities and Exchange Commission under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Act"), relating to the proposed issuance and sale by the Company of up to \$13,000,000 of the Company's (i) common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share ("Common Stock"), (iii) preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 ("Preferred Stock"), (iv) warrants ("Warrants") to purchase Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Debt Securities (as defined below) or any other class of securities registered pursuant to the Registration Statement, (iv) senior and subordinated debt securities ("Debt Securities"), to be issued in one or more series under a senior indenture or subordinated indenture, each in the forms filed as exhibits to the Registration Statement, as the same may be supplemented or amended from time to time (each an "Indenture" and collectively the "Indentures"), and (v) units comprised of Common Stock, Preferred Stock or any other class of securities registered pursuant to the Registration Statement in any combination (the "Units," and together with the Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Warrants and Debt Securities, the "Shelf Securities"), to be offered on an immediate, continuous or delayed basis pursuant to provisions of Rule 415 under the Act.

In rendering the opinions set forth below, we have examined (a) the Registration Statement and the exhibits thereto; (b) the Company's Certificate of Incorporation, as amended ("Certificate of Incorporation"); (c) the Company's Bylaws ("Bylaws"); (d) certain records of the Company's corporate proceedings as reflected in its minute books; and (e) such statutes, records and other documents as we have deemed relevant.

In our examination, we have assumed the genuineness of all signatures, the authenticity of all documents submitted to us as originals, and conformity with the originals of all documents submitted to us as copies thereof. We also have assumed that (i) the Registration Statement shall be effective and comply with all applicable laws at the time the Shelf Securities are offered or issued as contemplated by the Registration Statement, (ii) a prospectus and prospectus supplement describing each class or series of Shelf Securities offered pursuant to the Registration Statement shall have been filed with the SEC, (iii) all Shelf Securities will be issued and sold in compliance with the applicable provisions of the Act, the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 and the securities or blue sky laws of the various states, as applicable, and in the manner stated in the Registration Statement and the applicable prospectus supplement, (iv) resolutions authorizing the Company to register, offer, sell and issue the Shelf Securities shall have been duly adopted and shall remain in full force and effect, (v) the number of shares of Common Stock and Preferred Stock to be issued, together with all other shares of Common Stock and Preferred Stock that are outstanding or reserved for issuance, shall not exceed the number of such shares authorized under the Company's Certificate of Incorporation, (vi) the Indentures (including any supplemental indentures) and Debt Securities, any Warrant and/or warrant agreement, as applicable, any Unit and/or unit agreement, as applicable, and any definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement (collectively, the "Securities Agreements") shall have been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the parties thereto; (vii) each of the Securities Agreements shall provide that New York law governs such agreement, (viii) the execution and delivery of the Securities Agreements and the issuance and sale of Shelf Securities, will not violate or constitute a default or breach under any agreement or instrument binding the Company, any applicable law, rule or regulation, any judicial or regulatory order or decree of any governmental authority, or any consent, approval, license, authorization or validation of, or filing, recording or registration with, any governmental authority, (ix) the interest rate, if applicable, on the Shelf Securities shall not exceed the maximum lawful rate permitted from time to time under applicable law, (x) the trustee under the Indenture shall have been determined to be eligible and qualified under section 310(a) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, and (xi) the Shelf Securities shall have been duly recorded, as applicable, and the certificates representing the Shelf Securities, if any, shall have been duly authorized, executed, attested, authenticated and/or countersigned, as applicable, and delivered. In addition, we have made such other examinations of law and fact as we have deemed relevant in order to form a basis for the opinions hereinafter expressed.

Based upon and subject to the foregoing, we are of the opinion that:

1. When (A) the Board of Directors of the Company or a duly constituted and acting committee thereof (such Board of Directors or committee thereof being hereinafter collectively referred to as the "Board") has taken all necessary corporate action in conformity with the Company's Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws to approve the issuance of the Common Stock, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, and (B) such shares of Common Stock have been issued and delivered in accordance with the terms of the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement against payment therefor as provided therein (which shall not be less than par value of the Common Stock), or upon exercise, exchange or conversion of any other Shelf Security in accordance with the terms of the Shelf Security or the instrument governing the Shelf Security providing for the exercise, exchange or conversion as approved by the Board, for the consideration approved by the Board (which shall not be less than par value of the Common Stock), such shares of Common Stock will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

2. When (A) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action in conformity with the Company's Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws to approve the terms and issuance of a particular series of shares of Preferred Stock, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, including the adoption of a Certificate of Amendment for such Preferred Stock in accordance with applicable law relating to such shares of Preferred Stock and the filing of such Certificate of Amendment with the Department of State of the State of New York, and (B) such shares of Preferred Stock have been issued and delivered in accordance with the terms of the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement against payment therefor as provided therein (which shall not be less than par value of the Preferred Stock), or upon exercise, exchange or conversion of any other Shelf Security in accordance with the terms of the Shelf Security or the instrument governing the Shelf Security providing for the exercise, exchange or conversion as approved by the Board, for the consideration approved by the Board (which shall not be less than par value of the Preferred Stock), such shares of Preferred Stock will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

3. When (A) the Indenture (including any supplemental indenture) relating to the Debt Securities in a particular series has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company, (B) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action in conformity with the Company's Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws to approve the form, terms, execution and issuance and delivery of such Debt Securities, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, and (C) such Debt Securities have been duly executed, issued and delivered in accordance with the terms of the applicable Indenture (including any supplemental indenture) and the definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement against payment therefor, or upon exchange or conversion of any other Shelf Security in accordance with the terms of the Shelf Security or the instrument governing the Shelf Security providing for the exchange or conversion as approved by the Board, for the consideration approved by the Board, such Debt Securities will constitute binding obligations of the Company.

4. When (A) the warrant agreement, if any, relating to an issuance of Warrants has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company, (B) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action in conformity with the Company's Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws to approve the form, terms, execution and issuance and delivery of the Warrants, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, and (C) the Warrants have been duly executed, issued and delivered in accordance with the terms of the applicable warrant agreement, if any, and the definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board against payment of the consideration therefor as provided therein, such Warrants will constitute binding obligations of the Company.

5. When (A) the unit agreement, if any, relating to an issuance of Units has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company, (B) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action in conformity with the Company's Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws to approve the form, terms, execution and issuance and delivery of the Units, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, and (C) the Units have been duly executed, issued and delivered in accordance with the terms of the applicable unit agreement, if any, and the definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board against payment of the consideration therefor as provided therein, such Units will constitute binding obligations of the Company.

Our opinion that any document constitutes a binding obligation is qualified by reference to (i) the effect of bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, arrangement, moratorium or other similar laws relating to or affecting the rights of creditors generally, including, without limitation, laws relating to fraudulent transfers or conveyances, preferences and equitable subordination; and (ii) limitations imposed by general principles of equity, including without limitation concepts of materiality, reasonableness, good faith and fair dealing and the possible unavailability of specific performance, injunctive relief or other equitable remedies regardless of whether enforceability is considered in a proceeding in equity or at law.

We express no opinion regarding the effectiveness of (i) any waiver of stay, extension or usury laws or of unknown future rights; (ii) any waiver (whether or not stated as such) under the Securities Agreements of, or any consent thereunder relating to, unknown future rights or the rights of any party thereto existing, or duties owing to it, as a matter of law; (iii) any waiver (whether or not stated as such) contained in the Securities Agreements of rights of any party, or duties owing to it, that is broadly or vaguely stated or does not describe the right or duty purportedly waived with reasonable specificity; (iv) provisions relating to indemnification, exculpation or contribution, to the extent such provisions may be held unenforceable as contrary to public policy or federal or state securities laws or due to the negligence or willful misconduct of the indemnified party; (v) any purported fraudulent transfer "savings" clause; (vi) any provision in any Securities Agreement waiving the right to object to venue in any court; (vii) any agreement to submit to the jurisdiction of any Federal court; (viii) any waiver of the right to jury trial or (ix) any provision to the effect that every right or remedy is cumulative and may be exercised in addition to any other right or remedy or that the election of some particular remedy does not preclude recourse to one or more others.

No opinion is expressed herein other than as to the corporate law of the State of Delaware, the laws of the State of New York, and the federal securities law of the United States of America.

We hereby consent to the use of this opinion as Exhibit 5.1 to the Registration Statement, to the use of our name as counsel to the Company, and to all references made to us in the Registration Statement and the prospectuses forming a part thereof. In giving this consent, we do not thereby admit that we are in the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the Act, or the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder.

Very truly yours,

/s/ GRAUBARD MILLER

CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

We hereby consent to the inclusion in this Registration Statement on Form S-3 filed by Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc. of our report dated March 29, 2018 relating to the December 31, 2017 consolidated financial statements of Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc. and Subsidiaries appearing in this Registration Statement, and to the reference to us under the heading "Experts" in the Registration Statement.

/s/ Rosenfield and Company, PLLC

New York, New York
September 27, 2018
